

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Vector Spaces</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	Vector Spaces . . . . .	3
1.2	Subspaces . . . . .	14
1.3	Linear Combinations . . . . .	27
1.4	Linear Dependence and Linear Independence . . . . .	31
1.5	Bases and Dimension . . . . .	40
<b>2</b>	<b>Linear Transformations and Matrices</b>	<b>49</b>
2.1	Linear Transformations, Null spaces, and Ranges . . . . .	49
2.2	The Matrix Representation of a Linear Transformation . . . . .	69
2.3	Composition of Linear Transformations and Matrix Multiplication . . . . .	75
2.4	Invertibility and Isomorphisms . . . . .	86
2.5	The Change of Coordinate Matrix . . . . .	95
<b>3</b>	<b>Matrix Operations and Elementary Matrices</b>	<b>101</b>
3.1	The Rank of a Matrix and Matrix Inverses . . . . .	101
<b>4</b>	<b>Determinants</b>	<b>109</b>
4.1	Determinants of Order 2 . . . . .	109
4.2	Determinants of Order n . . . . .	112
<b>5</b>	<b>Diagonalization</b>	<b>117</b>
5.1	Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors . . . . .	117
5.2	Diagonalization . . . . .	127
<b>6</b>	<b>Inner Product Spaces</b>	<b>135</b>
6.1	Inner Products and Norms . . . . .	135
6.2	Gram-Schmidt Orthogonalization Process . . . . .	156
6.3	The Adjoint of a Linear Operator . . . . .	163
6.4	Normal and Self-Adjoint Operators . . . . .	172
6.5	Unitary and Orthogonal Operators . . . . .	185
6.6	Orthogonal Projections and the Spectral Theorem . . . . .	193



# Linear Algebra Exercises

Lance Remigio

May 31, 2024



# Chapter 1

## Vector Spaces

### 1.1 Vector Spaces

#### Exercise 1.2.1

Label the following statements as true or false.

- (a) Every vector space contains a zero vector.
- (b) A vector space may have more than one zero vector.
- (c) In any vector space,  $ax = bx$  implies that  $a = b$ .
- (d) In any vector space,  $ax = ay$  implies that  $x = y$ .

#### Exercise 1.2.7

Let  $S = \{0, 1\}$  and  $F = \mathbb{R}$ . In  $\mathcal{F}(S, \mathbb{R})$ , show that  $f = g$  and where  $f(t) = 2t+1$ ,  $g(t) = 1+4t-2t^2$ , and  $h(t) = 5t + 1$ .

**Proof.** To show that  $f = g$ , we have to show that for each  $s \in S$  that  $f(s) = g(s)$ . Since  $S = \{0, 1\}$ , we can just evaluate both  $f$  and  $g$  for elements in  $S$ . Note that

$$f(0) = 2(0) + 1 = 1$$

and likewise,

$$g(0) = 1 + 4(0) - 2(0)^2.$$

Hence,  $f(0) = g(0)$ . Now let us evaluate both functions  $f$  and  $g$  at  $s = 1$ . Hence, we have

$$f(1) = 2(1) + 1 = 3$$

and

$$g(1) = 1 + 4(1) - 2(1)^2 = 3.$$

Thus, we must have  $f(s) = g(s)$  for all  $s \in S$ .

Now, we need to show that  $f + g = h$ . Like we did above, we have to show that this is the case for all  $s \in S$ . Note that

$$(f + g)(s) = f(s) + g(s).$$

Hence, we have

$$f(s) + g(s) = 2 + 6s - 2s^2.$$

---

Evaluating at  $s = 0$ , we have

$$f(0) + g(0) = 2.$$

and likewise,

$$h(0) = 5^0 + 1 = 2.$$

Hence,  $(f + g)(0) = h(0)$ . Now let us evaluate  $f + g$  at  $s = 1$

$$f(1) + g(1) = 2 + 6(1) - 2(1)^2 = 6$$

and likewise, we have

$$h(1) = 5^1 + 1 = 6.$$

Hence, we have  $(f + g)(1) = h(1)$ . Thus, we have that  $f + g = h$  for all  $s \in S$ . ■

### Exercise 1.2.8

In any vector space  $V$ , we have

$$(a + b)(x + y) = ax + ay + bx + by$$

for any  $x, y \in V$  and any  $a, b \in F$ .

**Proof.** Observe the following set equalities:

$$(a + b)(x + y) = a(x + y) + b(x + y) \quad (\text{VS 8})$$

$$= ax + ay + bx + by. \quad (\text{VS 7})$$

Hence, we have that

$$(a + b)(x + y) = ax + ay + bx + by$$

for any  $x, y \in V$  and any  $a, b \in F$ . ■

### Exercise 1.2.10

Let  $V$  denote the set of all differentiable real-valued functions defined on the real line. Prove that  $V$  is a vector space with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in Example 3.

**Proof.** Let  $V$  denote the set of all differentiable real-valued functions defined on the real line. We need to show that  $V$  is a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$  with addition and scalar multiplication defined in Example 3.

(VS 1) Let  $f, g \in V$ . We need to show that  $f + g = g + f$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Since  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  are also real numbers, we have

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = g(x) + f(x) = (g + f)(x).$$

Hence, we have  $f + g = g + f$ .

(VS 2) Let  $f, g, h \in V$ . We need to show that  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ . Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Since

$f(x), g(x), h(x) \in \mathbb{R}$ , we can see that

$$\begin{aligned}(f + (g + h))(x) &= f(x) + (g + h)(x) \\ &= f(x) + g(x) + h(x) \\ &= (f + g)(x) + h(x) \\ &= ((f + g) + h)(x).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ .

(VS 3) Observe that  $f_0(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is also a real-valued function that is differentiable. We need to show that  $f + f_0 = f$ . Hence, we have

$$(f + f_0)(x) = f(x) + f_0(x) = f(x) + 0 = f(x).$$

Hence,  $f + f_0 = f$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 4) Take  $c = -1$  and perform a scalar operation with a  $f \in V$ . Observe that  $(-1 \cdot f)(x) = (-1)f(x) = -f(x)$ . Denote  $g = -f$ . Since additive inverses exists in  $\mathbb{R}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}(f - g)(x) &= (f - f)(x) \\ &= f(x) - f(x) \\ &= 0 \\ &= f_0(x).\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $f - g = f_0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 5) Let  $f \in V$  and let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . We need to show that  $1 \cdot f = f$ . Since  $f(x) \in \mathbb{R}$ , we can see that multiplicative identities in  $\mathbb{R}$  are also preserved in  $V$ ; that is, we have

$$(1f)(x) = 1 \cdot f(x) = f(x).$$

Hence, we have  $1f = f$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 6) Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f \in V$ . Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary. Then observe that

$$((ab)f)(x) = (ab)f(x) = a(bf(x)) = a(bf)(x).$$

Hence, we have  $(ab)f = a(bf)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 7) Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f, g \in V$ . We need to show that  $a(f + g) = af + ag$ . Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Observe that  $f(x), g(x) \in \mathbb{R}$  imply

$$\begin{aligned}(a(f + g))(x) &= a(f + g)(x) \\ &= a(f(x) + g(x)) \\ &= af(x) + ag(x) \\ &= (af)(x) + (ag)(x).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we conclude that  $a(f + g) = af + ag$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 8) Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f \in V$ . Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} ((a+b)f)(x) &= (a+b)f(x) \\ &= af(x) + bf(x) \\ &= (af)(x) + (bf)(x). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $(a+b)f = af + bf$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Since all the properties of a vector space have been satisfied, we conclude that  $V$  is a vector space. ■

### Exercise 1.2.11

Let  $V = \{0\}$  consist of a single vector  $O$  and define  $O + O = O$  and  $cO = O$  for each scalar  $c \in F$ . Prove that  $V$  is a vector space over  $F$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in O$ . Since  $V = \{0\}$ , we know that  $x$  and  $y$  are both the 0 vector. By using the addition defined on  $V$ , we can see that

$$x + y = O + O = y + x.$$

Note that  $x + y \in V$  implies that  $x + y = O + O$  and likewise  $y + z = O + O$  for every  $x, y, z \in V$ . Hence, we have that

$$x + (y + z) = O + (O + O) = (O + O) + O = (x + y) + z.$$

Since  $V$  consists of only the zero vector  $O$ , we know that (VS 3) and (VS 4) are satisfied. By the same reasoning, (VS 5) is satisfied because

$$1 \cdot O = O.$$

Let  $a, b \in F$ . Then (VS 6) and (VS 7) are satisfied because

$$(ab)O = 0 = a \cdot 0 = a(bO) \text{ and } a(O + O) = 0 = O + O = aO + aO \text{ respectively.}$$

Let  $a, b \in F$  again. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (a+b)O &= 0 \\ &= O + O \\ &= aO + bO. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, (VS 8) is satisfied. ■

### Exercise 1.2.12

A real-valued function  $f$  defined on the real line is called an **even function** if  $f(-t) = f(t)$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Prove that the set of even functions defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in Example 3 is a vector space.

**Proof.** First, let us show that for every  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  that  $(f + g)(t)$  is also an even function for every pair of even functions  $f, g$  and likewise  $(cf)(t)$  is an even function for every  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .



Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}(f + g)(-t) &= f(-t) + g(-t) \\ &= f(t) + g(t) \\ &= (f + g)(t).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, the function  $f + g$  is also even. Now observe that

$$\begin{aligned}(cf)(-t) &= cf(-t) \\ &= cf(t) \\ &= (cf)(t).\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $cf$  is also even function.

Now we can show that the set of even functions is a vector space.

(VS 1) Let  $f, g$  be a pair of real-valued even functions. Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary. We need to show that  $f + g = g + f$ . Since  $f(t)$  and  $g(t)$  are real numbers, observe that

$$(f + g)(t) = f(t) + g(t) = g(t) + f(t) = (g + f)(t).$$

Hence, we have that  $f + g = g + f$ .

(VS 2) Let  $f, g, h$  be even functions and let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary. We need to show that  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ . By the same reasoning we used to prove (VS 1), observe that

$$\begin{aligned}f(t) + ((g + h)(t)) &= f(t) + (g(t) + h(t)) \\ &= (f(t) + g(t)) + h(t) \\ &= ((f + g)(t)) + h(t)\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have that  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ .

(VS 3) Let  $f$  be an even function. Note that the zero function is an even function. Denote the zero function as  $f_0$ . For every  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have  $f_0(x) = 0$ . We need to show that  $f + f_0 = f$ . Since  $f_0(x)$  is just a real number, we have

$$(f + f_0)(t) = f(t) + f_0(t) = f(t) + 0 = f(t).$$

(VS 4) Let  $f$  be an even function and let  $f_0$  be the zero function defined above. We need to show that there exists an even function  $g$  such that  $f + g = f_0$ . Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary. Note that

$$(f + g)(t) = f(t) + g(t)$$

Since  $f(t)$  and  $g(t)$  are real numbers and there exists an additive identity in the real numbers, we have that  $f(t) + g(t) = f_0(t)$ . Hence, (VS 5) is satisfied.

(VS 5) Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f$  an even function. Then we immediately have  $(1 \cdot f)(t) = 1f(t) = f(t)$ .

(VS 6) Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ . We need to show that  $(ab)f = a(bf)$ . Hence, let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then we have

$$(abf)(t) = a(bf)(t).$$

(VS 7) Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f, g$  be even functions. Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . We need to show that  $a(f + g) = af + ag$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} a(f + g)(t) &= a[f(t) + g(t)] \\ &= af(t) + ag(t). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, (VS 7) is satisfied.

(VS 8) Now let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f$  be an even function. We need to show that  $(a + b)f = af + bf$ . Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} (a + b)f(t) &= af(t) + bf(t) \\ &= (af)(t) + (bf)(t) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, (VS 8) is satisfied. ■

### Exercise 1.2.13

Let  $V$  denote the set of ordered pairs of real numbers. If  $(a_1, a_2)$  and  $(b_1, b_2)$  are elements of  $V$  and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , define

$$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + a_2, a_2 b_2) \text{ and } c(a_1, a_2) = (ca_1, a_2).$$

Is  $V$  a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$  with these operations? Justify your answer.

**Proof.** We have that  $V$  is not a vector space of  $\mathbb{R}$ . To see why, let  $(2, 1), (4, 2) \in V$  where  $x = (2, 1)$  and  $y = (4, 2)$ . We will show that (VS 1) does not hold; that is,  $x + y \neq y + x$ . Hence, observe that

$$(2, 1) + (4, 2) = (2 + 1, 2) = (3, 2)$$

and

$$(4, 2) + (2, 1) = (4 + 2, 2) = (6, 2)$$

Hence, we have  $x + y \neq y + x$  and so  $V$  is **NOT** a vector space. ■

### Exercise 1.2.14

Let  $V = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_i \in C \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ ; so  $V$  is a vector space over  $C$  by Example 1. Is  $V$  a vector space over the field of real numbers with the operations of coordinate-wise addition and multiplication?

**Proof.** Yes,  $V$  where

$$V = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_i \in \mathbb{R} \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}$$

is a vector space of  $\mathbb{R}$ .

(VS 1) Let  $x, y \in V$  such that  $x = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$ . Since addition is

entry-wise in  $V$  and each entry in both  $x$  and  $y$  are elements of  $\mathbb{R}$  (where  $\mathbb{R}$  is a field), we have  $a_i + b_i = b_i + a_i$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Hence,  $x + y = y + x$ .

- (VS 2) Let  $x, y, z \in V$  with  $x$  and  $y$  as defined as before where  $z$  contains entries  $c_i$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . We can see that the entries of  $x, y, z$  are elements of  $\mathbb{R}$  so associativity is preserved; that is,  $a_i + (b_i + c_i) = (a_i + b_i) + c_i$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Hence, we have  $x + (y + z) = (x + y) + z$ .
- (VS 3) Since  $\mathbb{R}$  contains the zero element 0 and  $V$  is the set of  $n$ -tuples, there exists an element denoted by  $O$  such that this element consisting of entries that only have the zero element 0; that is,  $O = (0, 0, \dots, 0)$ . Take  $x \in V$ . Hence, we have  $a_i + 0 = a_i$  for every  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Thus, we must have  $x + O = x$ .
- (VS 4) Let  $x \in V$  be arbitrary as defined before. Since every entry in  $x$  is an element of  $\mathbb{R}$ ; that is, every  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , we know that every entry contains an element  $c_i$  such that  $a_i + c_i = 0$  for every  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Denote  $x' = (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ . Hence, we have  $x + x' = O$ .
- (VS 5) Let  $x \in V$ . Every entry  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , we have  $1 \cdot a_i = a_i$  which holds for all  $i$ . Denote this identity element as  $I$  with entries consisting only of 1. Hence, we have  $I \cdot x = x$ .
- (VS 6) Let  $e, r \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $x \in V$ . For every entry  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , we have  $(er)a_i = e(ra_i)$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . By using the operations of scalar multiplication for  $n$ -tuples, this tells us that  $(er)x = e(rx)$ . Hence, (VS 6) is satisfied.
- (VS 7) Let  $e \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $x, y \in V$ . We need to show that  $e(x + y) = ex + ey$ . Note that  $a_i, b_i \in \mathbb{R}$  implies that  $e(a_i + b_i) = ea_i + eb_i$ . Hence, we have  $e(x + y) = ex + ey$ .
- (VS 8) Let  $e, r \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $x \in V$  as defined before. We need to show that  $(e + r)x = ex + rx$ . Since  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$  with  $e, r \in \mathbb{R}$ , we are guaranteed to have  $(e + r)a_i = ea_i + ra_i$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Hence, we have  $(e + r)x = ex + rx$ .

■

### Exercise 1.2.16

Let  $V$  denote the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices with real entries; so  $V$  is a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$  by Example 2. Let  $F$  be the field of rational numbers. Is  $V$  a vector space over  $F$  with the usual definitions of matrix addition and scalar multiplication?

**Proof**(VS 1) Let  $A, B \in V$ . Since  $A, B$  consist of elements  $A_{ij}, B_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$ , we know that  $A_{ij} + B_{ij} = B_{ij} + A_{ij}$ . Hence,  $A + B = B + A$ .

(VS 2) Let  $A, B, C \in V$  with  $A, B$  defined as before and  $C$  containing real entries  $C_{ij}$ . With the same reasoning used to prove (VS 1), we know that  $A_{ij} + (B_{ij} + C_{ij}) = (A_{ij} + B_{ij}) + C_{ij}$ . Hence, we have  $A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C$ .

(VS 3) Let  $A \in V$  once again. Since the entries of  $A$  imply that there exists an element  $O$  such that  $A_{ij} + 0 = A_{ij}$ , we know that  $A + O = A$  where  $O$  is the **zero matrix** of  $V$ .

(VS 4) Since the real entries of  $A$  also consists of an element  $A'_{ij}$  such that  $A_{ij} + A'_{ij} = 0$ , this implies that  $A + A' = O$  where  $A'$  is the additive inverse matrix of  $V$ .

(VS 5) Let  $x \in V$  as defined as before. Every entry of  $A$ ,  $A_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$ , has the following property:

$1 \cdot A_{ij} = A_{ij}$  for all for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and for all  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . The matrix whose entries consists of only one we can define as the **identity matrix** denoted by  $I$  where  $I_{ij} = 1$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence, we have  $A \cdot I = A$ .

(VS 6) Let  $r, t \in \mathbb{Q}$  and let  $A \in V$  as defined before. We need to show that  $(rt)A = r(tA)$ . Since  $A_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$ , entry-wise scalar multiplication implies that  $(rt)A_{ij} = r(tA_{ij})$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence, we must have  $(rt)A = r(tA)$ .

(VS 7) Let  $r \in \mathbb{Q}$  and  $A, B \in V$  as defined before. Since  $A_{ij}, B_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$ , we know that  $r(A_{ij} + B_{ij}) = rA_{ij} + rB_{ij}$ . Hence, we have  $r(A + B) = rA + rB$ .

(VS 8) Let  $r, t \in \mathbb{Q}$  and let  $A \in V$  as defined before. Since  $A_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $i, j$ , we must have  $(r + t)A_{ij} = rA_{ij} + tA_{ij}$ . Hence, we have  $(r + t)A = rA + tA$ .

Hence,  $V$  is a vector space over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . ■

### Exercise 1.2.17

Let  $V = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in F\}$ , where  $F$  is a field. Define addition of elements of  $V$  coordinate-wise, and for  $c \in F$  and  $(a_1, a_2) \in V$ , define

$$c(a_1, a_2) = (ca_1, 0).$$

Is  $V$  a vector space over  $F$  with these operations? Justify your answer.

**Proof.** We claim that  $V$  is not a vector space over  $F$  because  $V$  fails to satisfy (VS 5). To see why, let  $(1, 2) \in V$ . Using (VS 5), we have

$$1 \cdot (1, 2) = (1, 0) \neq (1, 2).$$

Hence,  $V$  cannot be a vector space. ■

### Exercise 1.2.18

Let  $V = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . For  $(a_1, a_2), (b_1, b_2) \in V$  and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , define

$$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + 2b_1, a_2 + 3b_2) \text{ and } c(a_1, a_2) = (ca_1, ca_2).$$

Is  $V$  a vector space over  $F = \mathbb{R}$  with these operations? Justify your answer?

**Proof.** We claim that  $V$  is not a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$  and we will use (VS 1) to show this. Let  $x, y \in V$  be defined by  $x = (1, 2)$  and  $y = (3, 4)$ . Observe that

$$x + y = (1, 2) + (3, 4) = (7, 14)$$

and

$$y + x = (3, 4) + (1, 2) = (5, 10).$$

Clearly, we have  $x + y = (7, 14) \neq (5, 10) = y + x$  and so (VS 1) does not hold. ■

### Exercise 1.2.19

Let  $V = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . Define addition of elements of  $V$  coordinate-wise, and for  $(a_1, a_2) \in V$  and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , define

$$c(a_1, a_2) = \begin{cases} (0, 0) & \text{if } c = 0 \\ (ca_1, \frac{a_2}{c}) & \text{if } c \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

Is  $V$  a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$  with these operations? Justify your answer.

**Proof.** We claim that  $V$  is not a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . To see why, consider (VS 8). If we let  $(0, 1) \in V$  with  $c = 2 + 1 = 3$ . Observe that

$$(2 + 1)(0, 1) = \left(0, \frac{1}{2 + 1}\right) = \left(0, \frac{1}{3}\right).$$

Likewise, we have

$$2(0, 1) + 1(0, 1) = \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right) + (0, 1) = \left(0, \frac{3}{2}\right).$$

Notice that  $(2 + 1)(0, 1) \neq 2(0, 1) + 1(0, 1)$ . Hence,  $V$  cannot be a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . ■

### Exercise 1.2.20

Let  $V$  denote the set of all real-valued functions  $f$  defined on the real line such that  $f(1) = 0$ . Prove that  $V$  is a vector space with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in Example 3.

**Proof.** Define  $V$  as a vector space with the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in Example 3. We must show that  $V$  is a vector space.

(VS 1) Let  $f, g \in V$ . This means that  $f(1) = 0$  and  $g(1) = 0$ . We need to show that  $f + g = g + f$ . Since  $f(1), g(1) \in \mathbb{R}$  and commutativity holds in  $\mathbb{R}$ , we can write

$$\begin{aligned} (f + g)(1) &= f(1) + g(1) \\ &= g(1) + f(1) \\ &= (g + f)(1) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $f + g = g + f$ .

(VS 2) Let  $f, g, h \in V$  then  $f(1) = g(1) = h(1) = 0$ . We need to show that  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} (f + (g + h))(1) &= f(1) + (g + h)(1) \\ &= f(1) + g(1) + h(1) \\ &= (f + g)(1) + h(1) \\ &= ((f + g) + h)(1). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $f + (g + h) = (f + g) + h$ .

(VS 3) Let  $f \in V$ . We need to show that  $f + f_0 = f$  for some  $f_0 \in V$ . Since  $V$  contains elements of  $f \in V$  such that  $f(1) = 0$ , we can choose  $f_0$  such that  $f_0(1) = 0$ . We can show that this is indeed the additive inverse of  $V$  by writing the following:

$$(f + f_0)(1) = f(1) + f_0(1) = f(1) + 0 = f(1).$$

Hence, we have  $f + f_0 = f$ .

(VS 4) Let  $f \in V$ . We need to find an element  $g \in V$  such that  $f + g = f_0$ . By definition of  $V$ ,  $f(1) = 0$ . We need to show that  $f + g = f_0$  with  $f_0$  defined as before. Choose  $g = -f$

as our additive inverse and observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 (f + g)(1) &= (f - f)(1) \\
 &= f(1) - f(1) \\
 &= 0 - 0 \\
 &= 0 \\
 &= f_0(1).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $g = -f$  an element such that  $f + g = f_0$ .

(VS 5) Let  $f \in V$ . By definition of  $V$ , we have  $f(1) = 0$ . Since  $f(1) \in \mathbb{R}$ , we know that  $1 \cdot f(1) = f(1)$ . We need to show that  $1f = f$ . Observe that

$$(1f)(1) = 1 \cdot f(1) = f(1).$$

Hence, (VS 5) holds.

(VS 6) Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $x \in V$ . We need to show that  $(ab)f = a(bf)$ . By using scalar multiplication, we can see that

$$(ab \cdot f)(1) = (ab)f(1) = a(bf(1)) = a(b \cdot f)(1).$$

Hence, (VS 6) must hold.

(VS 7) Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f, g \in V$ . We need to show that  $a(f + g) = af + ag$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 a(f + g)(1) &= a(f(1) + g(1)) \\
 &= af(1) + ag(1) \\
 &= (af)(1) + (ag)(1).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $a(f + g) = af + ag$  and so (VS 7) is satisfied.

(VS 8) Let  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f \in V$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a + b)f(1) &= af(1) + bf(1) \\
 &= (af)(1) + (bf)(1)
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $(a + b)f = af + bf$ . Thus,  $V$  must be a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . ■

### Exercise 1.2.21

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over a field  $F$ . Let

$$Z = \{(v, w) : v \in V \text{ and } w \in W\}.$$

Prove that  $Z$  is a vector space over  $F$  with the operations

$$(v_1, w_1) + (v_2, w_2) = (v_1 + v_2, w_1 + w_2) \text{ and } c(v_1, w_1) = (cv_1, cw_1).$$

**Proof.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over a field  $F$ .

(VS 1) Let  $x, y \in Z$  where  $x = (v_1, w_1)$  and  $y = (v_2, w_2)$ . Since  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces, commutativity holds. Since the addition defined on both  $V$  and  $W$  is entry-wise, we

can see that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x + y &= (v_1, w_1) + (v_2, w_2) \\
 &= (v_1 + v_2, w_1 + w_2) \\
 &= (v_2 + v_1, w_2 + w_1) \\
 &= (v_2, w_2) + (v_1, w_1) \\
 &= y + x.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we can see that (VS 1) is satisfied.

(VS 2) Let  $x, y, z \in Z$  with  $x$  and  $y$  as defined before as well as  $z = (z_3, w_3)$ . Using the entry-wise addition defined for  $Z$ , we can see that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x + (y + z) &= (v_1, w_1) + ((v_2, w_2) + (v_3, w_3)) \\
 &= (v_1, w_1) + (v_2 + v_3, w_2 + w_3) \\
 &= (v_1 + (v_2 + v_3), w_1 + (w_2 + w_3)) \\
 &= ((v_1 + v_2) + v_3, (w_1 + w_2) + w_3) \\
 &= (v_1 + v_2, w_1 + w_2) + (v_3, w_3) \\
 &= (x + y) + z.
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 3) Since  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces, we know that there exists an additive identity  $O_V$  and  $O_W$  respectively. Hence, we have  $(O_V, O_W) \in Z$  and denote  $O_Z = (O_V, O_W)$ . Now, let  $x \in Z$  as defined before. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x + O_Z &= (v_1, w_1) + (O_V, O_W) \\
 &= (v_1 + O_V, w_1 + O_W) \\
 &= (v_1, w_1) \\
 &= x.
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 4) Observe that  $V$  and  $W$  contain additive inverses for each  $v \in V$  and  $w \in W$  respectively. Since  $x = (v_1, w_1)$  with  $v_1 \in V$  and  $w_1 \in W$ , there exists an additive inverse  $v'_1 \in V$  and  $w'_1 \in W$  such that  $v_1 + v'_1 = O_V$  and  $w_1 + w'_1 = O_W$ . This implies that  $(v'_1, w'_1) \in Z$  which we will denote by  $x'$  such that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x + x' &= (v_1, w_1) + (O_V, O_W) \\
 &= (v_1 + v'_1, w_1 + w'_1) \\
 &= (O_V, O_W) \\
 &= O_Z.
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 5) Let  $x \in Z$ . Since  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces (VS 5) implies that  $1 \cdot v_1 = v_1$  and  $1 \cdot w_1 = w_1$  respectively. Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \cdot x &= 1 \cdot (v_1, w_1) \\
 &= (1 \cdot v_1, 1 \cdot w_1) \\
 &= (v_1, w_1) \\
 &= x.
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 6) Let  $x \in Z$  and  $a, b \in F$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (ab)x &= (ab)(v_1, w_1) \\
 &= ((ab)v_1, (ab)w_1) \\
 &= (a(bv_1), a(bw_1)) && (V, W \text{ vector space}) \\
 &= a(bv_1, bw_1) \\
 &= a(bx)
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 7) Let  $x, y \in Z$  as defined before. Let  $a \in F$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 a(x + y) &= a((v_1, w_1) + (v_2, w_2)) \\
 &= a((v_1 + v_2, w_1 + w_2)) \\
 &= (a(v_1 + v_2), a(w_1 + w_2)) \\
 &= (av_1 + av_2, aw_1 + aw_2) \\
 &= (av_1, av_2) + (aw_1, aw_2) \\
 &= a(v_1, w_2) + a(w_1, w_2) \\
 &= ax + ay.
 \end{aligned}$$

(VS 8) Let  $a, b \in F$  and let  $x \in V$  as defined before. Since  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces, we know that (VS 8) holds for bot entries  $v_1 \in V$  and  $w_1 \in W$ . Hence, observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a + b)x &= (a + b)(v_1, w_1) \\
 &= ((a + b)v_1, (a + b)w_1) \\
 &= (av_1 + bv_1, aw_1 + bw_1) \\
 &= (av_1, aw_1) + (bv_1, bw_1) \\
 &= a(v_1, w_1) + b(v_1, w_1) \\
 &= ax + bx.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $Z$  is a vector space. ■

## 1.2 Subspaces

### Exercise 1.3.3

Prove that  $(aA + bB)^t = aA^t + bB^t$  for any  $A, B \in M_{m \times n}(F)$  and any  $a, b \in F$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A, B \in M_{m \times n}(F)$  and let  $a, b \in F$  be arbitrary. Using scalar multiplication defined on  $M_{m \times n}(F)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (aA + bB)^t &= (aA)^t + (bB)^t \\
 &= aA^t + bB^t.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we are done. ■



#### Exercise 1.3.4

Prove that  $(A^t)^t = A$  for each  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . By definition of transpose, we have

$$\left((A^t)^t\right)_{ij} = (A^t)_{ji} = A_{ij}$$

for all  $1 \leq i, j \leq n$ . Hence,  $(A^t)^t = A$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.3.5

Prove that  $A + A^t$  is symmetric for any square matrix  $A$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an arbitrary square matrix. Since square matrices are symmetric, we have that  $A^t = A$ . We need to show that  $(A + A^t)^t$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}(A + A^t)^t &= A^t + (A^t)^t \\ &= A + A.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $A + A^t$  is symmetric. ■

#### Exercise 1.3.

Prove that  $\text{tr}(aA + bB) = a\text{tr}(A) + b\text{tr}(B)$  for any  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and let  $a, b \in F$  be arbitrary. Now, let  $i = j$  and observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\text{tr}(aA + bB) &= \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n (aA + bB)_{ij} \\ &= \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n (aA)_{ij} + (bB)_{ij} \\ &= \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n (aA)_{ij} + \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n (bB)_{ij} \\ &= \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n aA_{ij} + \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n bB_{ij} \\ &= a \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n A_{ij} + b \sum_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}^n B_{ij} \\ &= a\text{tr}(A) + b\text{tr}(B).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we conclude

$$\text{tr}(aA + bB) = a\text{tr}(A) + b\text{tr}(B)$$

for any  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.3.7

Prove that diagonal matrices are symmetric matrices.

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  be diagonal. Let  $i \neq j$  where  $A_{ij} = 0$ . We need to show that  $A^t = A$ . If we apply a transpose on  $A$ , we get that  $A_{ji} = 0$  since  $A^t$  is also diagonal and square. Since  $A_{ij} = A_{ji} = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence,  $A^t = A$  ■

### Exercise 1.3.8

Determine whether the following sets are subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^3$  under the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Justify your answers.

- (a)  $W_1 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : a_1 = 3a_2 \text{ and } a_3 = -a_2\}$

**Proof.** We claim that  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

- (a) Note that  $O_{\mathbb{R}^3} \in W_1$  where  $O_{\mathbb{R}^3} = (0, 0, 0)$  because  $0 = 3 \cdot 0$  and  $0 = -1 \cdot 0$ .
- (b) Let  $x, y \in W_1$  where  $x = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$ . We need to show that  $x + y \in W_1$ . Since  $a_1 = 3a_2$  and  $a_3 = -a_2$  as well as  $b_1 = 3b_2$  and  $b_3 = -b_2$ , we can write  $a_1 + b_1 = 3(a_2 + b_2)$  and  $a_3 + b_3 = -(a_2 + b_2)$ . Hence,  $x + y \in W_1$ .
- (c) Let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $x \in W_1$  with  $x$  defined as before. Then observe that  $ca_1 = c(3a_2) = 3(ca_2)$  and  $ca_3 = c(-a_2) = -(ca_2)$ . Hence,  $cx \in W_1$ .

Since all the properties of a Theorem 3 have been satisfied, we can conclude that  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . ■

- (b)  $W_2 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : a_1 = a_3 + 2\}$
- (c)  $W_3 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : 2a_1 - 7a_2 + a_3 = 0\}$
- (d)  $W_4 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : a_1 - 4a_2 - 3a_3 = 1\}$
- (e)  $W_5 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : a_1 + 2a_2 - 3a_3 = 1\}$
- (f)  $W_6 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : 5a_1^2 - 3a_2^2 + 6a_3^2 = 0\}$

### Exercise 1.3.9

Let  $W_1, W_3, W_4$  be as in Exercise 8. Describe  $W_1 \cap W_3$ ,  $W_1 \cap W_4$ , and  $W_3 \cap W_4$  and observe that each is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 1.3.11

Prove that the set  $W_1 = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in F^n : a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n = 0\}$  is a subspace of  $F^n$ , but  $W_2 = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in F^n : a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n = 1\}$  is not.

**Proof.** We need to show that  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $F^n$ . We proceed by satisfying the properties of Theorem 3 to do this.

- (a) Note that  $O_{F^n} \in W_1$  since  $0 + 0 + \dots + 0 = 0$   $n$  times.
- (b) Let  $x, y \in W_1$  with  $x = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$ . By definition of  $W_1$ ,

we can see that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^n (a_i + b_i) &= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \\ &= 0 + 0 \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $x + y \in W_1$  which tells us that  $W_1$  is closed under addition.

(c) Let  $x \in W_1$  and  $c \in F$ . Then observe that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (ca_i) = c \sum_{i=1}^n a_i = c \cdot 0 = 0.$$

Hence, we have  $cx \in F^n$ .

We claim that  $W_2$  is not a subspace because  $W_2$  is not closed under addition. Let  $(0, 1), (1, 0) \in F^2$ . Observe that  $0+1 = 1$  and  $1+0 = 1$ , but  $(0+1)+(1+0) = 1+1 = 2$ . Hence,  $(0, 1) + (1, 0) \notin W_2$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.11

Is the set  $W = \{f(x) \in P(F) : f(x) = 0 \text{ or } f(x) \text{ has degree } n\}$  a subspace of  $P(F)$  if  $n \geq 1$ ? Justify your answer.

### Exercise 1.3.12

Prove that the set of  $m \times n$  upper triangular matrices is a subspace of  $M_{m \times n}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V$  denote the set of  $m \times n$  upper triangular matrices. We will show that  $V$  is a subspace of  $M_{m \times n}(F)$  using Theorem 3.

- (a) The zero matrix  $O$  from  $M_{m \times n}(F)$  contains entries  $O_{ij} = 0$  whenever  $i > j$ . Hence,  $O \in V$ .
- (b) Let  $A, B \in V$ . By definition of  $V$ ,  $A$  and  $B$  are upper triangular where  $A_{ij} = 0$  and  $B_{ij} = 0$  whenever  $i > j$ . Observe that

$$(A + B)_{ij} = A_{ij} + B_{ij} = 0 + 0 = 0$$

whenever  $i > j$ . Hence,  $A + B \in V$ .

- (c) Let  $c \in F$  and  $A \in V$  as defined before. Let  $i > j$  and observe that  $(cA)_{ij} = cA_{ij} = c \cdot 0 = 0$ . Hence,  $cA \in V$ .

Since all the properties of theorem 3 have been satisfied, we conclude that  $V$  is indeed a subspace of  $M_{m \times n}(F)$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.13

Let  $S$  be nonempty set and  $F$  is a field. Prove that for any  $s_0 \in S$ , the set  $\{f \in \mathcal{F}(S, F) : f(s_0) = 0\}$ , is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ .

**Proof.** We will proceed to prove that  $S$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$  over the field  $F$  by satisfying the properties of Theorem 3. Let  $V = \{f \in \mathcal{F}(S, F) : f(s_0) = 0\}$ .

(a) Note that the zero function  $f_0 \in \mathcal{F}(S, F)$  where  $f_0(s_0) = 0$  for any  $s_0 \in S$  implies that  $f_0 \in V$ .

(b) Let  $f, g \in V$ . By definition of  $V$ ,  $f(s_0) = 0$  and  $g(s_0) = 0$  for any  $s_0 \in S$ . We have  $f + g \in V$  since

$$(f + g)(s_0) = f(s_0) + g(s_0) = 0 + 0 = 0.$$

Hence,  $V$  is closed under addition.

(c) Let  $f \in V$  and  $c \in F$ . We have  $cf \in V$  since

$$(cf)(s_0) = cf(s_0) = c \cdot 0 = 0$$

for any  $s_0 \in S$ . Hence,  $V$  is closed under scalar multiplication. ■

#### Exercise 1.3.14

Let  $S$  be a nonempty set and  $F$  a field. Let  $\mathcal{C}(S, F)$  denote the set of all functions  $f \in \mathcal{F}(S, F)$  such that  $f(s) = 0$  for all but a finite number of elements of  $S$ . Prove that  $\mathcal{C}(S, F)$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ .

**Proof.** We proceed by using Theorem 3 to prove that  $\mathcal{C}(S, F)$  is a subspace where  $S$  is a nonempty set and  $F$  is a field.

(a) Note that the zero vector  $f_0 \in \mathcal{F}(S, F)$  is in  $\mathcal{C}(S, F)$  because  $f_0(x_n) = 0$  where  $x_n \in S$  for finitely many  $n$ .

(b) Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(S, F)$ . We need to show that  $f + g \in \mathcal{C}(S, F)$ . Let  $x_n \in S$  for finitely many  $n$ . Then using the addition defined on  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ , we can write

$$(f + g)(x_n) = f(x_n) + g(x_n) = 0 + 0 = 0.$$

(c) Let  $f \in \mathcal{C}(S, F)$  and  $c \in F$ . We need to show that  $cf \in \mathcal{C}(S, F)$ . Let  $x_n \in S$  for finitely many  $n$ . Using the scalar operation defined on  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ , we can write

$$(cf)(x_n) = cf(x_n) = c \cdot 0 = 0.$$

Since all the properties of Theorem 3 have been satisfied, we conclude that  $\mathcal{C}(S, F)$  is indeed a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(S, F)$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.3.15

Is the set of all differentiable real-valued functions defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  a subspace of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ ?

**Proof.** We claim that the set of all differentiable real-valued functions defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  is a subspace of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ . Denote this set as  $V$ .

(a) Note that the zero function  $f_0$  is differentiable for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and continuous for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence,  $f_0 \in V$ .

- (b) Let  $f, g \in V$ . Using the addition operation defined on  $C(\mathbb{R})$ , we get that the sum  $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$  is differentiable which implies that the sum of functions  $f, g$  is also continuous. Hence,  $f + g \in V$ .
- (c) Let  $f \in V$  and let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then  $(cf)(x) = cf(x)$  is differentiable for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  which means that  $cf$  is also continuous. Hence,  $cf \in V$ .

Hence,  $V$  is a subspace of  $C(\mathbb{R})$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.16

Let  $C^n(\mathbb{R})$  denote the set of all real-valued functions defined on the real line that have a continuous  $n$ th derivative. Prove that  $C^n(\mathbb{R})$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$ .

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 1.3.17

Prove that a subset  $W$  of a vector space  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if  $W \neq \emptyset$  and, whenever  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$ , then  $ax \in W$  and  $x + y \in W$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, let  $W \subseteq V$  where  $V$  is a vector space and  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Let  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$ . Since  $W$  is a subspace, we know that  $O_V \in W$ . So,  $W$  is nonempty. Since  $W$  is closed under addition and multiplication, we get that  $x + y \in W$  and  $ax \in W$  and we are done.

For the backwards direction, let  $W \neq \emptyset$  and  $W \subseteq V$ . Let  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$  be arbitrary such that  $ax \in W$  and  $x + y \in W$ . We need to show that  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . We need only show that  $O_V \in W$  since  $W$  is closed under addition and scalar multiplication. Let  $x \in W$ . We can pick any  $c \in F$  such that  $c = 0$ . So, we have  $c \cdot x = 0 \cdot x = O_w$ . Since the zero vector  $O_W \in W$  is unique, we must have  $O_V = O_W$ . Hence,  $O_V \in W$  and we conclude that  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.18

Prove that a subset  $W$  of a vector space  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if  $O \in W$  and  $ax + y \in W$  whenever  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Let  $W \subseteq V$  where  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we know that  $W$  is closed under addition and scalar multiplication. Let  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$ . Using the third property of Theorem 3, we can see that  $ax \in W$ . Since  $W$  is closed under addition, we can take  $y \in W$  and  $ax \in W$  such that  $ax + y \in W$ . Since  $W$  is also a vector space by definition, we know that  $O_W \in W$ . But  $O_W = O_V$  so  $O_V \in W$ .

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Let  $a \in F$  and  $x, y \in W$ . We want to show that  $W \subseteq V$  is a subspace of  $V$ . We can do this by using Theorem 3.

- (a) By assumption, the zero vector  $O_V \in W$ .
- (b) Let  $x, y \in W$ . Choose  $a = 1$  such that  $ax + y = x + y$ . Since  $ax + y \in W$  and  $ax + y = x + y$ , we also have  $x + y \in W$ . Hence,  $W$  is closed under addition.
- (c) Let  $x \in W$  and  $O_V \in W$ . Let  $a \in F$ . Then we have  $ax + O_V = ax \in W$ .

Hence,  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$  by Theorem 3. ■

### Exercise 1.3.19

Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a vector space  $V$ . Prove that  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  or  $W_2 \subseteq W_1$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Let  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$ . We need to show that  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  or  $W_2 \subseteq W_1$ . We proceed by showing the contrapositive. Assume  $W_2 \not\subseteq W_1$  and  $W_1 \not\subseteq W_2$ . We need to show that  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is **NOT** a subspace of  $V$ . By assumption,  $x \in W_1$  is not contained in  $W_2$  as well as  $y \in W_2$  is not contained in  $W_1$ . This implies that  $W_1 \cup W_2 \neq \emptyset$ . Since  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is empty where  $W_1 \cup W_2$  does not contain  $O_V$ , it cannot possibly be a subspace of  $V$ .

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Let  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  or  $W_2 \subseteq W_1$ . We need to show that  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$ . We proceed by using Theorem 3 to do this. Without loss of generality, assume  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ . The proof will be the same if we use  $W_2 \subseteq W_1$ .

- (a) Since  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we get that  $O_V \in W_1$ . Furthermore,  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  implies that  $O_V \in W_2$ . Since  $O_V \in W_1$  and  $O_V \in W_2$ , we get that  $O_V \in W_1 \cup W_2$  by definition of union.
- (b) Let  $x, y \in W_1$ . Since  $W_1$  is a subspace, we get that  $x + y \in W_1$ . Since  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ , we also get that  $x + y \in W_2$ . Since both  $x + y \in W_1$  and  $x + y \in W_2$ , we know that  $x + y \in W_1 \cup W_2$  by definition of the union.
- (c) Let  $x \in W_1$  and  $c \in F$ . Since  $W_1$  is closed under scalar multiplication, we have that  $cx \in W_1$ . But  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  so  $W_2$  also contains  $cx \in W_1$ . So we must have  $cx \in W_1 \cup W_2$ .

Hence,  $W_1 \cup W_2$  is a subspace of a vector space  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.20

Prove that if  $W$  is a subspace of a vector space  $V$  and  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n$  are in  $W$ , then  $a_1w_1 + a_2w_2 + \dots + a_nw_n \in W$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W$  be a subspace of a vector space  $V$ . Our goal is to show that the following statement:  $a_1w_1 + a_2w_2 + \dots + a_nw_n \in W$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . We proceed by induction on  $i \geq 1$ . Let  $i = 1$ . Since  $W$  is closed under scalar multiplication, we know that  $a_1 \in F$  and  $w_1 \in W$  implies that  $a_1w_1 \in W$ . Now let  $i = 2$ , then  $w_1, w_2 \in W$  and  $a_1, a_2 \in F$  implies that  $a_1w_1 + a_2w_2 \in W$  since  $W$  is closed under scalar multiplication and addition. Now, assume that our result holds for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . We want to show that it also holds for  $i = n + 1$ . By our inductive hypothesis, we know that  $a_1w_1 + a_2w_2 + \dots + a_nw_n \in W$ . Let  $a_{n+1} \in F$  and  $w_{n+1} \in W$ . Using vector addition and scalar multiplication, we know that

$$(a_1w_1 + a_2w_2 + \dots + a_nw_n) + a_{n+1}w_{n+1} \in W.$$
■

### Exercise 1.3.21

Let  $V$  denote the vector space of sequences in  $\mathbb{R}$ , as defined in Example 5 of section 1.2. Show that the set of convergent sequences  $(a_n)$  (that is, those for which  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exists) is a subspace of  $V$ .

**Proof.** We will show that  $W$  (the set of convergent sequences in  $\mathbb{R}$ ) is a subspace of  $V$  by using Theorem 3.

- (a) Note that the zero sequence  $O_n$  is zero for all  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . Hence, the limit of  $O_n$  converges to 0 and so we have  $O_n \in W$ .
- (b) Let  $(a_n)$  and  $(b_n)$  be two convergent sequences in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then we get that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n$  exists. Observe that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_n + b_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n.$$

Since the  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are both convergent sequences, we also get that the sum  $(a_n + b_n)$  also converges. Hence,  $(a_n + b_n) \in W$ .

- (c) Let  $t \in F$  and  $a_n \in W$  as before. Then we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} ta_n = t \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n.$$

Since any constant  $t \in F$  multiplied by a convergent sequence is convergent, we also get that the sequence  $(ta_n)$  is also convergent. Hence,  $ta_n \in W$ .

■

### Exercise 1.3.22

Let  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  be fields. A function  $g \in \mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  is called an **even function** if  $g(-t) = g(t)$  for each  $t \in F_1$  and is called an **odd function** if  $g(-t) = -g(t)$  for each  $t \in F_1$ . Prove that the set of all even functions in  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  and the set of all odd functions in  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  are subspaces of  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V$  be the set of all even functions and let  $W$  be the set of all odd functions. We will first prove that  $V$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  and the same with  $W$ .

- (a) Note that the zero function  $f_0$  from  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  is even since  $f_0(-t) = 0 = f_0(t)$  for all  $t \in F_1$ . Hence,  $f_0 \in V$ .
- (b) Let  $f, g \in V$ . We need to show that  $f + g \in V$ ; that is, we need to show that it is even. Let  $t \in F_1$ . Then observe that

$$(f + g)(-t) = f(-t) + g(-t) = f(t) + g(t) = (f + g)(t)$$

Hence,  $(f + g)(-t) = (f + g)(t)$  for all  $t \in F_1$ .

- (c) Let  $f \in V$  and let  $c \in F_2$ . Then observe that

$$(cf)(-t) = cf(-t) = cf(t) = (cf)(t).$$

Hence,  $cf \in V$ .

Since all the properties of  $V$  are satisfied, we have that  $V$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$ .

Now we will prove  $W$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$ .

- (a) Note that the zero function  $f_0$  is in  $W$  because for any  $t \in F_1$  we have  $f_0(-t) = 0 = -1 \cdot 0 = -f_0(t)$ . Hence,  $f_0 \in W$ .

(b) Let  $f, g \in W$  and Let  $t \in F_1$ . Observe that

$$(f + g)(-t) = f(-t) + g(-t) = -f(t) - g(t) = -(f + g)(t).$$

Hence,  $f + g \in W$ .

(c) Let  $c \in F_2$  and  $f \in W$ . Let  $t \in F_1$  such that  $f(-t) = -f(t)$ . Then observe that

$$(cf)(-t) = cf(-t) = cf(t) = (cf)(t).$$

Hence,  $cf \in W$ .

Hence,  $W$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{F}(F_1, F_2)$  ■

**Definition 1.2.1 (Sum of Two Sets).** If  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are nonempty subsets of a vector spaces  $V$ , then the **sum**  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ , denoted  $S_1 + S_2$ , is the set  $\{x + y : x \in S_1 \text{ and } y \in S_2\}$ .

**Definition 1.2.2 (Direct Sum).** A vector space  $V$  is called the **direct sum** of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  if  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces of  $V$  such that  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$  and  $W_1 + W_2 = V$ . We denote that  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  by writing  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .

### Exercise 1.3.23

Let  $W_1 + W_2$  is a subspace of a vector space  $V$ .

(a) Prove that  $W_1 + W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$  that contains both  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a vector space  $V$ . Define  $W_1 + W_2$  as the set

$$\{x_1 + y_2 : w_1 \in W_1 \text{ and } w_2 \in W_2\}.$$

(a) Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces of  $V$ , we know that the zero vector  $O_V$  is contained in both  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ . Hence, the sum  $O_V = O_V + O_V \in W_1 + W_2$ .

(b) Let  $u, v \in W_1 + W_2$  with  $u = x_1 + y_1$  and  $v = x_2 + y_2$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces of  $V$ , we know that addition is closed in both subsets  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ . Hence,  $x_1 + x_2 \in W_1$  and  $y_1 + y_2 \in W_2$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} u + v &= (x_1 + y_1) + (x_2 + y_2) \\ &= (x_1 + x_2) + (y_1 + y_2) \in W_1 + W_2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, addition is closed in  $W_1 + W_2$ .

(c) Let  $c \in F$  where  $F$  is a field and let  $u \in W_1 + W_2$  with  $u = x_1 + y_1$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces of  $V$ , we know that  $cx_1 \in W_1$  and  $cy_1 \in W_2$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} cu &= c(x_1 + y_1) \\ &= cx_1 + cy_1 \in W_1 + W_2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $W_1 + W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$ . ■

(b) Prove that any subspace of  $V$  that contains both  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  must also contain  $W_1 + W_2$ .



**Proof.** Let  $X$  be a subspace of  $V$ . Suppose  $X$  contains both  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ ; that is,  $W_1 \subseteq X$  and  $W_2 \subseteq X$ . We must show that  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq X$ . Let  $u \in W_1 + W_2$  with  $u = x_1 + y_1$ . By definition, we have  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $y_1 \in W_2$ . Since  $W_1 \subseteq X$  and  $W_2 \subseteq X$ , we have  $x_1 \in X$  and  $y_1 \in X$ . Since  $X$  is a subspace of  $V$  and  $X$  is closed under addition, we have  $x_1 + y_1 \in X$ . Hence,  $u \in X$  and we conclude  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq X$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.24

Show that  $F^n$  is the direct sum of the subspaces

$$W_1 = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in F^n : a_n = 0\}$$

and

$$W_2 = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in F^n : a_1 = a_2 = \dots = a_{n-1} = 0\}.$$

**Proof.** Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of  $F^n$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces, they both contain the zero vector  $O_{F^n}$ . Observe that for any element  $x \in W_1$ , we have the  $n$ th element  $a_n = 0$ . On the other hand,  $y \in W_2$  implies that  $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = a_{n-1} = 0$  except for the  $n$ th element. Thus, the only element that  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  have in common is the zero vector  $O_{F^n}$ . Hence, we have  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{O_{F^n}\}$ .

Now, we show  $W_1 + W_2 = F^n$ . To do this, we need to show the following containments:

(i)  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq F^n$  and

(ii)  $F^n \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ .

Let  $u \in W_1 + W_2$  with  $u = x_1 + x_2$  where  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ . Since  $W_1 \subseteq F^n$ , we know that  $x_1 \in F^n$ . Likewise,  $W_2 \subseteq F^n$  implies that  $x_2 \in F^n$ . Since  $F^n$  is a vector space where addition is closed, we have that  $u = x_1 + x_2 \in F^n$ . Hence,  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq F^n$ .

Now, let  $u \in F^n$ . Since  $F^n$  is a vector space over  $F$ , each entry in  $u$  (where each entry is an element of a field  $F$ ) can be written and separated using the addition defined in  $F^n$  in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} u &= (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \\ &= (a_1 + 0, a_2 + 0, \dots, 0 + a_n) \\ &= (a_1, a_2, \dots, 0) + (0, 0, \dots, a_n) \end{aligned}$$

where the first term is an element of  $W_1$  and the second term is an element of  $W_2$ . Hence,  $u \in W_1 + W_2$ .

Since both containments are satisfied, we have that  $W_1 + W_2 = F^n$ . Thus,  $W_1 \oplus W_2 = F^n$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.25

Let  $W_1$  denote the set of all polynomials  $f(x)$  in  $P(F)$  such that in the representation

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0,$$

we have  $a_i = 0$  whenever  $i$  is even. Likewise, let  $W_2$  denote the set of all polynomials  $g(x)$  in  $P(F)$  such that in the representation

$$g(x) = b_m x^m + b_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \dots + b_1 x + b_0,$$

we have  $b_i = 0$  whenever  $i$  is odd. Prove that  $P(F) = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $f(x) \in W_1$ . Then we have

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_nx^n$$

where  $a_i = 0$  where  $i$  is even. Likewise, let  $g(x) \in W_2$ . Hence,

$$g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \cdots + b_{n-1}x^{n-1} + b_nx^n$$

where  $b_i = 0$  for  $i$  odd. This tells us that the only representation that  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  have in common is the zero polynomial  $f(x) = 0$  where  $a_i = 0$  for all  $0 \leq i \leq n$ . Hence,  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$ .

Now, we want to show that  $W_1 + W_2 = P(F)$ ; that is, we need to show  $P(F) \subseteq W_1 + W_2$  and  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq P(F)$ . Starting with the former, let  $f \in P(F)$ . Observe that for  $a_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq n$

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_nx^n \\ &= \underbrace{(a_1x + a_3x^3 + \cdots + a_nx^n)}_{\in W_1} + \underbrace{(a_0 + a_2x^2 + a_4x^4 + \cdots + a_nx^n)}_{\in W_2} \end{aligned}$$

The first term of the last equality contains coefficients  $a_i = 0$  for even  $i$  and the second term contains coefficients  $a_i = 0$  for odd  $i$ . This implies that  $f(x) \in W_1 + W_2$ . Hence,  $P(F) \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ .

Now, let  $u(x) \in W_1 + W_2$  with  $u(x) = f(x) + g(x)$  with  $f(x) \in W_1$  and  $g(x) \in W_2$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subsets of  $P(F)$ , we have that  $f(x), g(x) \in P(F)$ . Since addition is closed in  $P(F)$ , we have that  $u(x) = f(x) + g(x) \in P(F)$ . Hence,  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq P(F)$ . Since  $W_1 + W_2 = P(F)$  and  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$ , we have  $W_1 \oplus W_2 = P(F)$ . ■

### Exercise 1.3.26

In  $M_{m \times n}(F)$  define  $W_1 = \{A \in M_{m \times n}(F) : A_{ij} = 0 \text{ whenever } i > j\}$  and  $W_2 = \{A \in M_{m \times n}(F) : A_{ij} \text{ whenever } i \leq j\}$ . Show that  $M_{m \times n}(F) = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . ( $W_1$  is the set of all triangular matrices as defined in the previous section.)

**Proof. TO DO.** ■

### Exercise 1.3.30

Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a vector space  $V$ . Prove that  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  if and only if each vector in  $V$  can be *uniquely* written as  $x_1 + x_2$ , where  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of  $V$ . Let  $v \in V$ . Let  $x_1, x'_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2, x'_2 \in W_2$  such that  $v = x_1 + x_2 = x'_1 + x'_2$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  is closed under addition, we know that  $x_1 - x'_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 - x'_2 \in W_2$ . But observe that  $x_1 - x'_1 = x_2 - x'_2 \in W_1 \cap W_2$ . Since  $V$  is a direct sum of the two subspaces  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ , we know that  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0_V\}$  which implies that  $x_1 = x'_1$  and  $x_2 = x'_2$ . This tells us that every  $v$  can be expressed uniquely as  $x_1 + x_2$  with  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ .

Conversely, suppose every vector  $v \in V$  can be *uniquely* written as  $x_1 + x_2$  with  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ . We need to show that  $W_1 \oplus W_2 = V$ . Since  $v \in V$  is uniquely expressed in terms of  $x_1 + x_2$ , the only vector that the two subspaces  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  share is the zero vector.

Hence,  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{O_V\}$ . Now, we need to show that  $V = W_1 + W_2$ ; that is, we need to show  $V \subseteq W_1 + W_2$  and  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq V$ . Suppose  $v \in V$ . Since  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ , we have that  $v \in W_1 + W_2$ . Hence,  $V \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ . Now, let  $v \in W_1 + W_2$ . Since  $v = x_1 + x_2$  where  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$  and  $W_1 \subseteq V$  and  $W_2 \subseteq V$ , we know that  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are contained within  $V$ . Since  $V$  is vector space, we know that sum of  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are contained in  $V$ . Hence,  $v \in V$  and so  $V \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ . Thus,  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . ■

**Definition 1.2.3 (Cosets).** Let  $W$  be a subspace of a vector space  $V$  over a field  $F$ . For any  $v \in V$  the set  $\{v\} + W = \{v + w : w \in W\}$  is called the **coset** of  $W$  **containing**  $v$ . It is customary to denote this coset by  $v + W$  rather than  $\{v\} + W$ .

**Definition 1.2.4 (Addition of Cosets).** The **addition** of two cosets  $v_1 + W$  and  $v_2 + W$  is defined as

$$(v_1 + W) + (v_2 + W) = (v_1 + v_2) + W$$

for all  $v_1, v_2 \in V$ .

**Definition 1.2.5 (Scalar Multiplication of Cosets).** The **scalar multiplication** of cosets by scalars of  $F$  can be defined as

$$a(v + W) = av + W$$

for all  $v \in V$  and  $a \in F$ .

### Exercise 1.3.31

The following exercises require the application of the definitions above.

- (a) Prove that  $v + W$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if  $v \in W$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $v + W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Then  $0_V \in v + W$  which implies that  $0_V = v + w$ . Hence,  $v = -w$  where  $-w \in W$  and thus  $v \in W$ . Conversely, suppose  $v \in W$ .

- (a) Since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we know that  $0_V \in W$ . Since  $v \in W$ , there exists an element  $v' \in W$  such that  $v + v' = 0_V$ . But this tell us that  $0_V \in v + W$ .  
 (b) Let  $x, y \in v + W$ . By definition,  $x = v + w$  and  $y = v + w'$  for  $w, w' \in W$ . Then observe that

$$x + y = (v + w) + (v + w') = v + (v + w + w')$$

where  $v + w + w' \in W$  since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Hence,  $v + W$  is closed under addition.

- (c) Let  $x \in v + W$ . Choose  $c \in F$  for which we will show that  $cx \in v + W$ . Then

$$cx = c(v + w) = cv + cw = v(cv + cw - v)$$

where  $cv + cw - v$  since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

Hence,  $v + W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . ■

- (b) Prove that  $v_1 + W = v_2 + W$  if and only if  $v_1 - v_2 \in W$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in v_1 + W$ . Then for  $\alpha \in W$ , we have  $x = v_1 + \alpha$ . Since  $v_1 + W = v_2 + W$ , then  $x \in v_2 + W$  implies that for  $\beta \in W$ , we have  $x = v_2 + \beta$ . Then observe that

$$v_1 + \alpha = v_2 + \beta \Rightarrow v_1 - v_2 = \beta - \alpha.$$

Since  $W$  is a subspace, we have that  $\beta - \alpha = v_1 - v_2 \in W$ .

Conversely, suppose  $v_1 - v_2 \in W$ . By part (a), we know that  $(v_1 - v_2) + W$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Hence,  $0_V \in (v_1 - v_2) + W$ . This means that there exists  $w' \in W$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} (v_1 - v_2) + w' &= 0_V \\ \Rightarrow v_1 + w' &= v_2 + (w - w) \\ \Rightarrow v_1 + \underbrace{(w' + w)}_{\in W} &= v_2 + \underbrace{w}_{\in W}. \end{aligned}$$

This tells us that  $v_1 + W = v_2 + W$  and we are done. ■

- (c) Prove that the preceding operations are well defined; that is, show that if  $v_1 + W = v'_1 + W$  and  $v_2 + W = v'_2 + W$ , then

$$(v_1 + W) + (v_2 + W) = (v'_1 + W) + (v'_2 + W)$$

and

$$a(v_1 + W) = a(v'_1 + W)$$

for all  $a \in F$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $v_1 + W = v'_1 + W$  and  $v_2 + W = v'_2 + W$ . Then  $v_1 - v'_1 \in W$  and  $v_2 - v'_2 \in W$  by part (b). Consequently, we have  $(v_1 - v'_1) + (v_2 - v'_2) \in W$  if and only if  $(v_1 + v_2) - (v'_1 + v'_2) \in W$  since  $W$  is subspace. Using part (b) again, we have that

$$(v_1 + v_2) + W = (v'_1 + v'_2) + W.$$

Using the addition defined on cosets, we get

$$(v_1 + W) + (v_2 + W) = (v'_1 + W) + (v'_2 + W).$$

Since  $W$  is a subspace, we have  $c(v_1 - v'_1) \in W$  if and only if  $cv_1 - cv'_1 \in W$  for some  $a \in F$ . By part (b), we get that

$$av_1 + W = av'_1 + W$$

which can be re-written to

$$a(v_1 + W) = a(v'_1 + W)$$

as our desired result. ■

- (d) Prove that the set  $S = \{v + W : v \in V\}$  is a vector space with the operations defined in (c). This vector space is called the **quotient space of  $V$  modulo  $W$**  by  $V \setminus W$ .

**Proof.** It suffices to show that  $S$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

- (a) Since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we know that  $0_V \in W$ . Then  $0_V + 0_V = 0_V \in S$ .

(b) Let  $x, y \in S$ . Then using the operations defined in part (c), we write

$$x + y = (v_1 + W) + (v_2 + W) = (v_1 + v_2) + W.$$

This tells us that  $x + y \in S$ .

(c) Let  $x \in S$ . Our goal is to show that  $c \in F$  implies  $cx \in S$ . Using the scalar multiplication in part (c), we get that

$$cx = c(v_1 + W) = cv_1 + W.$$

Thus,  $S$  is a vector space. ■

### 1.3 Linear Combinations

#### Exercise 1.4.7

In  $F^n$ , let  $e_j$  denote the vector whose  $j$ th coordinate is 1 and whose other coordinates are 0. Prove that  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  generates  $F^n$ .

**Proof.** Denote the set  $V = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$ . Our goal is to find scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n \in F$  such that for all  $e_j \in V$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$ ,

$$\delta_1 e_1 + \delta_2 e_2 + \dots + \delta_n e_n = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n). \quad (1)$$

Since  $e_j = 1$  for the  $j$ th coordinate and the rest of the entries are zeros, we have that

$$\delta_j e_j = \delta_j (0, 0, \underbrace{1}_{j\text{th entry}}, \dots, 0) = (0, 0, \delta_j, \dots, 0)$$

for all  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Summing up each term on the left side of (1) and equating each coordinate to the right side of (1), we get that  $a_j = \delta_j$  for each  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence, the set  $V$  can span the vector space  $F^n$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.4.8

Show that  $P_n(F)$  is generated by  $\{1, x, \dots, x^n\}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V = \{1, x, \dots, x^n\}$ . We need to find scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n \in F$  such that

$$\delta_0 + \delta_1 x + \delta_2 x^2 + \dots + \delta_n x^n = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots + a_n x^n. \quad (1)$$

Immediately, we have that equating coefficients in (1) gives us  $a_i = \delta_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Hence,  $V$  generates  $P_n(F)$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.4.9

Show that the matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

generate  $M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Define  $V$  with the given  $2 \times 2$  matrices above. We need to find scalars  $\delta_i \in F$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq 4$  such that

$$\delta_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \delta_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \delta_3 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \delta_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1)$$

Distributing each scalar  $\delta_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq 4$  for each term in (1), summing up each matrix in (1), and equating each term entry-wise, we have that  $a_{11} = \delta_1$ ,  $a_{12} = \delta_2$ ,  $a_{21} = \delta_3$ , and  $a_{22} = \delta_4$ . Hence,  $V$  spans  $M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.4.10

Show that if

$$M_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, M_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } M_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

then the span of  $\{M_1, M_2, M_3\}$  is the set of all symmetric  $2 \times 2$  matrices.

**Proof.** We need to show that the set  $\{M_1, M_2, M_3\}$  spans the set of all symmetric  $2 \times 2$  matrices. We need to find scalars  $a_1, a_2, a_3$  such that

$$a_1 M_1 + a_2 M_2 + a_3 M_3 = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{12} \\ \delta_{21} & \delta_{22} \end{pmatrix} = A \quad (1)$$

where  $A$  is any  $2 \times 2$  symmetric matrix. Observe that for  $i = j$ , we have  $\delta_{12} = \delta_{21}$ . Performing scalar multiplication on matrices  $M_1, M_2$ , and  $M_3$ , addition of all three terms on (1), and equating entry-wise, we get that  $\delta_{12} = \delta_{21} = \delta_3$  and  $\delta_{11} = \delta_1$  and  $\delta_2 = a_{22}$ . Hence, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ a_3 & a_2 \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ a_3 & a_2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus, the set  $\{M_1, M_2, M_3\}$  spans the set of all symmetric  $2 \times 2$  matrices. ■

#### Exercise 1.4.11

Prove that  $\text{span}(\{x\}) = \{ax : a \in F\}$  for any vector  $x$  in a vector space  $V$ . Interpret this result geometrically in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

**Proof.** We need to show that  $\text{span}(\{x\}) = \{ax : a \in F\}$ , we need to show two containments; that is,  $\text{span}(\{x\}) \subseteq \{ax : a \in F\}$  and  $\{ax : a \in F\} \subseteq \text{span}(\{x\})$ . Let  $v \in \text{span}(\{x\})$ . Then observe that we can find  $\delta \in F$  such that multiplying by  $x \in V$  leads  $v = \delta x$ . But this means that  $v \in \{ax : a \in F\}$  by definition. Hence,  $\text{span}(\{x\}) \subseteq \{ax : a \in F\}$ . Let  $v \in \{ax : a \in F\}$ . Then  $v = ax$  for some  $a \in F$ . But this is a linear combination of  $x$  that makes  $v$ . So  $v \in \text{span}(\{x\})$  and hence,  $\{ax : a \in F\} \subseteq \text{span}(\{x\})$ . This result can be viewed as the scaling of vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.4.12

Show that a subset  $W$  of a vector space  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if  $\text{span}(W) = W$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Let  $W$  be a subspace of  $V$ . To show that  $\text{span}(W) = W$ , we need to show two containments; that is,  $\text{span}(W) \subseteq W$  and  $W \subseteq \text{span}(W)$ . Clearly,  $W$  contains itself. Hence,  $\text{span}(W) \subseteq W$  Theorem 5. Let  $v \in W$ . Since  $W$  is a subspace, we can find scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  and vectors  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n \in W$  such that

$$v = a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n \in W$$

using the result in Exercise 1.3.20. But this tells us that  $v \in \text{span}(W)$ . Hence,  $W \subseteq \text{span}(W)$ .

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Since the span of any subset of  $W$  is a subspace and  $W = \text{span}(W)$ , we have that  $W$  is a subspace as well by Theorem 5. ■

### Exercise 1.4.13

Show that if  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are subsets of a vector space  $V$  such that  $S_1 \subseteq S_2$ , then  $\text{span}(S_1) \subseteq \text{span}(S_2)$ . In particular, if  $S_1 \subseteq S_2$  and  $\text{span}(S_1) = V$ , deduce that  $\text{span}(S_2) = V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be subsets of a vector space  $V$ . Let  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$ . We can find scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n \in F$  and  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1$  such that

$$v = \delta_1x_1 + \delta_2x_2 + \cdots + \delta_nx_n.$$

Since  $S_1 \subseteq S_2$ , we know that  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_2$  so we must have  $v \in \text{span}(S_2)$ . Hence,  $\text{span}(S_1) \subseteq \text{span}(S_2)$ .

Now, let  $\text{span}(S_1) = V$ . We need to show that  $\text{span}(S_2) = V$ ; that is, we need to show  $\text{span}(S_2) \subseteq V$  and  $V \subseteq \text{span}(S_2)$ . By assumption,  $S_2 \subseteq V$  and  $\text{span}(S_2)$  is a subspace. Clearly,  $\text{span}(S_2) \subseteq V$ . Since  $\text{span}(S_1) = V$  and  $\text{span}(S_1) \subseteq \text{span}(S_2)$ , we have  $V \subseteq \text{span}(S_2)$ . Hence,  $\text{span}(S_2) = V$ . ■

### Exercise 1.4.14

Show that if  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are arbitrary subsets of a vector space  $V$ , then  $\text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2) = \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$ . (The sum of two subsets is defined in the exercises of Section 1.3.)

**Proof.** Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be subsets of a vector space  $V$ . We need to show  $\text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2) = \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$ ; that is,  $\text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$  and  $\text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2)$ . Let  $v \in \text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2)$ . We can find  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n \in F$  such that  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1 \cup S_2$  implies that

$$v = \delta_1x_1 + \delta_2x_2 + \cdots + \delta_nx_n.$$

Hence, either  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1$  or  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_2$ . If  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1$ , then  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$ . Since  $\text{span}(S_2)$  is a subspace, we know that  $0_V \in \text{span}(S_2)$ . Hence,  $0_V \in \text{span}(S_1)$  and  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$  imply that  $v + 0_V = v \in \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$ . The other case follows a similar process. Hence,  $\text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$ .

Let  $s \in \text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2)$ . Hence,  $s = u + v$  where  $u \in \text{span}(S_1)$  and  $v \in \text{span}(S_2)$ . The former implies that we can find scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1$  where

$$u = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i$$

and the latter implies that there exists scalars  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n \in F$  such that  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n \in S_2$

where

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i y_i.$$

Since both  $x_i \in S_1$  and  $y_i \in S_2$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , we have  $x_i, y_i \in S_1 \cup S_2$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . So we must have  $s \in \text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2)$ . Hence,  $\text{span}(S_1) + \text{span}(S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1 \cup S_2)$ . ■

#### Exercise 1.4.15

Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be subsets of a vector space  $V$ . Prove that  $\text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$ . Give an example in which  $\text{span}(S_2 \cap S_2)$  and  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$  are equal and one in which they are not unequal.

**Proof.** Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be subsets of a vector space  $V$ . Let  $v \in \text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2)$ . Then we can find scalars  $a_i \in F$  and vectors  $x_i \in S_1 \cap S_2$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i.$$

If  $x_i \in S_1 \cap S_2$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , then  $x_i \in S_1$  and  $x_i \in S_2$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . This implies that  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$  and  $v \in \text{span}(S_2)$ . Hence,  $v \in \text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$ . Thus, we conclude that  $\text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2) \subseteq \text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$ . ■

**Example 1.3.1.** Define  $S_1$  as the set

$$\{(1, 1, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}$$

and  $S_2$  as the set

$$\{(1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}.$$

Observe that  $S_1 \cap S_2 = \{(1, 1, 0)\}$  and thus the of this set yields  $\{a(1, 1, 0) : a \in F \text{ and } (1, 1, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}$ . The span of  $S_1$  yields the following set  $\{a(1, 1, 0) : a \in F \text{ and } (1, 1, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}$  and the span of  $S_2$  yields the following set

$$\{a(1, 1, 0) + b(1, 0, 1) + c(0, 1, 1) : a, b, c \in F \text{ and } (1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}.$$

Note that  $\text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2) \neq \text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$  since  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2) \neq \emptyset$ .

Now define  $S_1 = \{O_V\} = S_2$ . Clearly,  $S_1 \cap S_2 = \{O_V\}$ ,  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2) = \{O_V\}$ , and that  $\text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2)$  is also equal to this set.  $\text{span}(S_1 \cap S_2) = \text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2)$

#### Exercise 1.4.16

Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $S$  a subset of  $V$  with the property that whenever  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in S$  and  $a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \dots + a_n v_n = 0$ , then  $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = a_n = 0$ . Prove that every vector in the span of  $S$  can be *uniquely* written as a linear combination of vectors of  $S$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in \text{span}(S)$ . Suppose there exists two sets of scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  and  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n \in F$  such that whenever  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in S$  such that

$$a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \dots + a_n v_n = x \tag{1}$$

and

$$b_1 v_1 + b_2 v_2 + \dots + b_n v_n = x \tag{2}$$



implies that  $a_i$ . Setting (1) and (2) together, we have

$$a_1v_1 + a_2v_2 + \cdots + a_nv_n = b_1v_1 + b_2v_2 + \cdots + b_nv_n \quad (3)$$

which implies that

$$(a_1 - b_1)v_1 + (a_2 - b_2)v_2 + \cdots + (a_n - b_n)v_n = 0.$$

Since  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in S$ , we have that  $a_i - b_i = 0$  and thus  $a_i = b_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Hence, every vector in the span of  $S$  can be *uniquely* written as a linear combination of vectors of  $S$ . ■

## 1.4 Linear Dependence and Linear Independence

### Exercise 1.5.1

Label the following statements as true or false.

- (a) If  $S$  is a linearly dependent set, then each vector in  $S$  is a linear combination of other vector in  $S$ .

**Proof. True** ■

- (b) Any set containing the zero vector is linearly dependent.

**Proof. True** ■

- (c) The empty set is linearly dependent.

**Proof. False.** It is linearly independent. ■

- (d) Subsets of linearly dependent sets are linearly dependent.

**Proof.** This is **False**. We can have a linearly independent subset of a set that is linearly dependent. ■

- (e) Subsets of linearly independent sets are linearly independent.

**Proof. True** by corollary to Theorem 6. ■

- (f) If  $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n = 0$  and  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are linearly independent, then all the scalars  $a_i$  are zero.

**Proof. True** this is by definition. ■

### Exercise 1.5.4

In  $F^n$ , let  $e_j$  denote the vector whose  $j$ th coordinate is 1 and whose other coordinates are 0. Prove that  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Choose a finite amount of scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  to create the following linear combination:

$$a_1e_1 + a_2e_2 + \cdots + a_ne_n = (0, 0, \dots, 0). \quad (1)$$

To show that the set  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  is linearly independent, we need to show that the scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  have the trivial representation; that is,  $a_1 = a_2 = \cdots = a_n = 0$ .

Since the  $j$ th coordinate of  $e_j$  is 1 but 0 in all the other entries, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} & a_1(1, 0, \dots, 0) + a_2(0, 1, \dots, 0) + \dots + a_n(0, 0, \dots, 1) \\ &= (a_1, 0, \dots, 0) + (0, a_2, \dots, 0) + \dots + (0, 0, \dots, a_n) \\ &= (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (0, 0, \dots, 0).$$

Equating each entry of the left side of the equation above to 0, we find that  $a_i = 0$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence, the set  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  is linearly independent. ■

#### Exercise 1.5.4

Show that the set  $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$  is linearly independent in  $P_n(F)$ .

**Proof.** Just like the prior exercise, we need to show that we can find scalars  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that

$$a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n = 0$$

where  $a_i = 0$  for all  $0 \leq i \leq n$ . Note that the 0 polynomial is just

$$0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots + 0x^n = 0.$$

Hence, equating coefficients we immediately get that  $a_i = 0$  for all  $0 \leq i \leq n$ . Thus, the set  $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$  is linearly independent. ■

#### Exercise 1.5.6

In  $M_{m \times n}(F)$ , let  $E^{ij}$  denote the matrix whose only nonzero entry is 1 in the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column. Prove that  $\{E^{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\}$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** First, we create a linear combination of a finite amount vectors in  $E = \{E^{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\}$  with scalars  $\delta_k$  for  $1 \leq k \leq N$  with  $N = mn$  as the number of total entries in each matrix in  $\{E^{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\}$ . Note that after doing our scalar multiplication and summing up each term, we find that each  $\delta_k E_{ij} = \delta_k$  in our linear combination can equated with a corresponding  $i$  and  $j$  entry in the zero matrix such that  $\delta_k = 0$  for all  $1 \leq k \leq N$ . Hence,  $E$  is a linearly independent set. ■

#### Exercise 1.5.7

Recall from Example 3 in Section 1.3 that the set of diagonal matrices in  $M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  is a subspace. Find a linearly independent set that generates this subspace.

**Proof.** Define  $W$  as the linearly independent spanning set of the set of diagonal matrices in  $M_{2 \times 2}$  where

$$W = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}.$$

To see why  $W$  is a linearly independent set, choose scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2 \in F$  such that

$$\delta_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \delta_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Performing scalar multiplication and vector addition gives us the following equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} \delta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \delta_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since the zero matrix is a diagonal matrix, we know that equation entries where  $i = j$  yields  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = 0$ . Hence,  $W$  is a linearly independent set that generates the set of diagonal matrices of  $M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ . ■

### Exercise 1.5.8

Let  $S = \{(1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1)\}$  be a subset of the vector space  $F^3$ .

- (a) Prove that if  $F = \mathbb{R}$ , then  $S$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** ■

- (b) Prove that if  $F$  has characteristic two, then  $S$  is linearly dependent.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 1.5.9

Let  $u$  and  $v$  be distinct vectors in a vector space  $V$ . Show that  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly dependent if and only if  $u$  or  $v$  is a multiple of the other. I have written two proofs for this:

**Proof.** Let  $u$  and  $v$  be distinct vectors in a vector space  $V$ .

( $\Rightarrow$ ) Since  $\{u, v\}$  is a linearly dependent set, we can find scalars  $a_1, a_2 \in F$  such that

$$a_1 u + a_2 v = 0 \tag{1}$$

Suppose  $v$  is not a multiple of  $u$  and choose  $a_1 \neq 0$  since  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly dependent. We need to show that  $u$  is a multiple of  $v$ . Solving for  $u$ , we get that

$$u = -\frac{a_2}{a_1} v.$$

Hence,  $u$  is a multiple of  $v$ .

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Suppose  $u$  or  $v$  is a scalar multiple of the other. Assume  $u$  is the scalar multiple of  $v$ . Then for some  $c \neq 0 \in F$ , we have  $u = cv$ . Hence, we have  $u - cv = 1u - cv = 0$ . This tells us that  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly dependent. ■

### Exercise 1.5.12

Prove Theorem 1.6 and its corollary.

**Proof.** See proof in notes. ■

### Exercise 1.5.13

Let  $V$  be a vector space over a field of characteristic not equal to two.

- (a) Let  $u$  and  $v$  be distinct vectors in  $V$ . Prove that  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly independent if and only if  $\{u + v, u - v\}$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Let  $u$  and  $v$  be distinct vectors in  $V$ .

For the forwards direction, assume  $\{u, v\}$  is a linearly independent set. We need to show that  $\{u + v, u - v\}$  is linearly independent. Hence, we need to find  $a, b \in F$  such that

$$a(u + v) + b(u - v) = 0. \quad (1)$$

Note that (1) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} a(u + v) + b(u - v) &= au + av + bu - bv \\ &= au - bv + av + bu. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\{u, v\}$  is a linearly independent set, we have that

$$au - bv = 0$$

and

$$av + bu = 0$$

for  $a = b = 0$ . Hence,

$$a(u + v) + b(u - v) = 0$$

for  $a = b = 0$  and so  $\{u - v, u + v\}$  is a linearly independent set.

For the backwards direction, suppose  $\{u + v, u - v\}$  is linearly independent. We need to show that  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly independent. Note that  $a, b \in F$  such that

$$a(u + v) + b(u - v) = 0$$

for  $a = b = 0$  since  $\{u - v, u + v\}$  is linearly independent. Note that

$$\begin{aligned} a(u + v) + b(u - v) &= au + av + bu - bv \\ &= au - bv + av + bu \\ &= 0 + av + bu \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $av + bu = 0$  where  $a, b$  both zero. Thus, the set  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly independent. ■

- (b) Let  $u, v$ , and  $w$  be distinct vectors in  $V$ . Prove that  $\{u, v, w\}$  is linearly independent if and only if  $\{u + v, u + w, v + w\}$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, suppose  $\{u, v, w\}$  is linearly independent. Then choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, a_3 \in F$  such that

$$a_1u + a_2v + a_3w = 0$$

with  $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0$ . We need to show that  $\{u + v, u + w, v + w\}$  is linearly independent; that is, we need to show that we can find scalars  $a_1, a_2, a_3 \in F$  such that

$$a_1(u + v) + a_2(u + w) + a_3(v + w) = 0 \quad (1)$$

for  $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0$ . Observe that (1) can be written in the following way

$$(a_1u + a_3v + a_2w) + (a_1v + a_2u + a_3w) = 0 \quad (2)$$

Since  $\{u, v, w\}$  is linearly independent, we know that  $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0$ . But this also has to mean that  $\{u + v, u + w, v + w\}$  is a linearly independent set.

For the backwards direction, suppose  $\{u + v, u + w, v + w\}$  is linearly independent. Then choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, a_3 \in F$  such that

$$a_1(u + v) + a_2(u + w) + a_3(v + w) = 0. \quad (1)$$

We need to show that  $\{u, v, w\}$  is linearly independent. Observe that (1) can be re-written as

$$\begin{aligned} (a_1u + a_3v + a_2w) + (a_1v + a_2u + a_3w) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow 0 + (a_1v + a_2u + a_3w) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow a_1v + a_2u + a_3w &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where  $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0$ . Hence,  $\{u, v, w\}$  is linearly independent. ■

#### Exercise 1.5.14

Prove that a set  $S$  is linearly dependent if and only if  $S = \{0\}$  or there exists distinct vectors  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$  such that  $v$  is a linear combination of  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, Let  $S$  be a linearly dependent. Then we need to show that either  $S = \{0\}$  or  $S$  contains distinct vectors  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$  such that  $v \in \text{span}(S)$ . Suppose there does not exist distinct vectors  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$  such that  $v \in \text{span}(S)$ . This tells us that  $S$  only contains the singleton  $S = \{v\}$ . Furthermore, we must require  $v = 0$  since  $S$  is linearly dependent. Otherwise,  $v \neq 0$  would imply that  $S$  is linearly independent. Hence, we have  $S = \{0\}$ . Now suppose  $S \neq \{0\}$ . Since  $S$  is linearly dependent, there exists scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n+1}$  and vectors  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$  such that

$$a_1v + a_2u_1 + a_3u_2 + \dots + a_{n+1}u_n = 0$$

with all  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, a_{n+1}$  not all equal to zero. Solving for  $v$ , we get that

$$v = -(a_1^{-1}a_2)u_1 - (a_1^{-1}a_3)u_2 - \dots - (a_1^{-1}a_{n+1})u_n.$$

Since  $v$  is a linear combination of  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ , we have that  $v \in \text{span}(S)$ .

Conversely, suppose that either  $S = \{0\}$  or there exists distinct vectors  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$  such that  $v$  is a linear combination of  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ . Assume  $S = \{0\}$ . Then  $S$  is linearly dependent because the singleton is the zero vector. Now suppose  $v$  is a linear combination of vectors  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ . Then there exists scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  and distinct vectors  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$  such that

$$v = a_1u_1 + a_2u_2 + \dots + a_nu_n.$$

Subtracting  $v$  from both sides of this equation yields the following equation

$$a_1u_1 + a_2u_2 + \dots + a_nu_n - 1v = 0.$$

Since not all scalars in the equation above are zero and  $v, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in S$ , we must have that  $S$  is a linearly dependent set. ■

### Exercise 1.5.15

Prove that a set  $S = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n\}$  be a finite set of vectors. Prove that  $S$  is linearly dependent if and only if  $u_1 = 0$  or  $u_{k+1} \in \text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\})$  for some  $k$  where  $1 \leq k < n$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $u_{k+1} \notin \text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\})$  for all  $1 \leq k < n$ . Since  $S$  is linearly dependent, we know that the zero vector is contained in  $S$ . Choose  $k = 1$  such that  $u_1 = 0$  and we are done. On the other hand, suppose  $u_1 \neq 0$ . We need to show that  $u_{k+1} \in \text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\})$ . Choose  $k = n - 1$ . Then clearly  $n = k + 1$ . Since  $S$  is linearly independent, choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that

$$a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \dots + a_k u_k + a_{k+1} u_{k+1} = 0. \quad (1)$$

where  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k, a_{k+1}$  not all zero. Solving for  $u_{k+1}$  by subtracting  $a_{k+1} u_{k+1}$  on both sides of (1) and multiplying  $-a_{k+1}^{-1}$  on both sides of (1), we end up with the following equation:

$$u_{k+1} = -(a_{k+1}^{-1} a_1) u_1 - (a_{k+1}^{-1} a_2) u_2 - \dots - (a_{k+1}^{-1} a_k) u_k.$$

This tells us that  $u_{k+1}$  can be written as a linear combination of vectors  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k$ . Hence,  $u_{k+1} \in \text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\})$ .

Conversely, either  $u_1 = 0$  or  $u_{k+1} \in \text{span}(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k)$ . Suppose  $u_1 = 0$ . Then  $S$  contains the zero vector so  $S$  must be linearly dependent. On the other hand, choose  $k = n - 1$  where  $1 \leq k < n$  such that  $u_{k+1} \in \text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\})$  implies that there exists scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} u_{k+1} &= a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \dots + a_k u_k \\ \Rightarrow u_n &= a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \dots + a_{n-1} u_{n-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

Subtracting  $u_n$  on both sides of (1) implies that

$$(a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2 + \dots + a_{n-1} u_{n-1}) - 1 u_n = 0.$$

Since not all scalars in the linear combination above are zero, we know that  $S$  must be linearly dependent. ■

### Exercise 1.5.16

Prove that a set  $S$  of vectors is linearly independent if and only if each finite subset of  $S$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Suppose  $S$  is a linearly independent set. Let  $S'$  be any finite subset of  $S$ . By corollary to Theorem 6, we can see that  $S' \subseteq S$  implies that  $S'$  is also linearly independent. ( $\Leftarrow$ ) We will proceed by proving the contrapositive. Let  $S' \subseteq S$  be a finite subset that is linearly dependent set. We will prove that  $S$  is a linearly dependent set. Since  $S' \subseteq S$ , we have that  $S$  must be a linearly dependent set by Theorem 6. ■

### Exercise 1.5.17

Let  $M$  be a square upper triangular matrix (as defined in Section 1.3) with nonzero diagonal entries. Prove that the columns of  $M$  are linearly independent.

**Proof.** Let  $M$  be a square upper triangular matrix. Note that  $M$  have the following form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ 0 & a_{22} & a_{23} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \ddots & a_{n-1n} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can define the following columns as vectors  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$  where

$$v_1 = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, v_2 = \begin{pmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \dots, v_n = \begin{pmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Choose scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n \in F$  such that

$$\delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \cdots + \delta_n v_n = 0$$

where the zero vector  $0$  is denoted as

$$0 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using scalar multiplication and addition, we arrive at the following system of equations:

$$\delta_1 a_{11} + \delta_2 a_{12} + \cdots + \delta_{n-1} a_{1n-1} + \delta_n a_{1n} = 0$$

$$\delta_2 a_{22} + \delta_3 a_{23} + \cdots + \delta_n a_{2n} = 0$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\delta_{n-1} a_{n-1n-1} + \delta_n a_{n-1n} = 0$$

$$\delta_n a_{nn} = 0.$$

Since all the diagonal entries of  $M$  are non-zero, we can see from the equation above that  $\delta_n = 0$  which subsequently tells us that  $\delta_{n-1} = 0$ . We claim that  $\delta_1 = \cdots = \delta_{n-1} = \delta_n = 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . We can prove this via induction. Let our base case be  $n = 1$ . Then we have  $\delta_1 a_{11} = 0$  with  $a_{11} \neq 0$  implies  $\delta_1 = 0$ . Now let  $n = 2$ . Then observe that we have an upper triangular  $2 \times 2$  matrix such that the linear combination of the columns lead to the following system of linear equations:

$$\delta_1 a_{11} + \delta_2 a_{12} = 0$$

$$0 + \delta_2 a_{22} = 0.$$

Observe that  $\delta_2 = 0$  which also implies that  $\delta_1 = 0$ . Now suppose our claim that  $\delta_1 = \cdots = \delta_{n-1} = \delta_n = 0$  holds for all  $n \geq 1$ . We want to show that our claim still holds for the  $n + 1$  case. Observe that  $\delta_{n+1} = 0$  derived from an  $n + 1 \times n + 1$  matrix. Using the same process that proved the base case, we find that  $\delta_n = \delta_{n+1} = 0$ . By our inductive hypothesis, we know that  $\delta_1 = \cdots = \delta_{n-1} = \delta_n = 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . This tells us that  $\delta_1 = \cdots = \delta_{n+1}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . Hence, the columns of  $M$  are linearly independent. ■

### Exercise 1.5.18

Let  $S$  be a set of nonzero polynomials in  $P(F)$  such that no two have the same degree. Prove that  $S$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Let  $0 \leq n \leq k$  such that  $S = \{p_0(x), p_1(x), p_2(x), \dots, p_k(x)\}$  where every  $p_n(x)$  non-zero such that no two polynomials in this set have the same degree. Define  $p_n(x) = x^n + x^{n+1} + \dots + x^k$ . Choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k \in F$  such that

$$a_1 p_1(x) + a_2 p_2(x) + \dots + a_k p_k(x) = 0 \quad (1)$$

We need to show that  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = \dots = \delta_k = 0$ . Observe that (1) implies that

$$a_0 + (a_0 + a_1 + a_2)x^2 + \dots + (a_0 + a_1 + \dots + a_k)x^k = 0. \quad (2)$$

Setting each  $x^n$  to both sides of the equation above leads to the following system of linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= 0 \\ a_0 + a_1 &= 0 \\ a_0 + a_1 + a_2 &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ a_0 + a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_k &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

It can be proved via induction that  $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = a_k = 0$  for all  $1 \leq n \leq k$ . Hence,  $S$  is a linearly independent set. ■

### Exercise 1.5.19

Prove that if  $\{A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $M_{n \times n}(F)$ , then  $\{A_1^t, A_2^t, A_3^t, \dots, A_k^t\}$  is also linearly independent.

**Proof.** Suppose  $\{A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k\}$  is a linearly independent set. Choose a finite set of scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_k \in F$  such that

$$\delta_1 A_1 + \delta_2 A_2 + \dots + \delta_k A_k = 0$$

with  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = \dots = \delta_k = 0$ . Apply the transpose to both sides, we know that  $0^t = 0$  and  $(\delta_i A_i)^t = \delta_i (A_i)^t$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Hence, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\delta_1 A_1 + \delta_2 A_2 + \dots + \delta_k A_k)^t &= 0^t \\ \Rightarrow (\delta_1 A_1)^t + (\delta_2 A_2)^t + \dots + (\delta_k A_k)^t &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \delta_1 A_1^t + \delta_2 A_2^t + \dots + \delta_k A_k^t &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the set  $\{A_1^t, A_2^t, \dots, A_k^t\}$  is also linearly independent. ■

### Exercise 1.5.20

Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$  be the functions defined by  $f(t) = e^{rt}$  and  $g(t) = e^{st}$ , where  $r \neq s$ . Prove that  $f$  and  $g$  are linearly independent in  $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$ .

**Proof.** Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$  where  $f$  and  $g$  are defined by  $f(t) = e^{rt}$  and  $g(t) = e^{st}$  with



$r \neq s$ . Suppose for sake of contradiction that the set  $\{f, g\}$  is a linearly dependent set of vectors. By Exercise 1.5.9, we know that either  $f$  is a multiple of  $g$  or  $g$  is a multiple of  $f$ . Assume  $f$  is a multiple of  $g$ . Hence, there exists a  $c \in R$  such that  $f(t) = cg(t)$ . In other words,

$$f(t) = cg(t) \Rightarrow e^{rt} = ce^{st}.$$

To solve for  $c$ , let  $t = 0$ . Then we have

$$f(0) = cg(0) \Rightarrow 1 = c.$$

Hence, we have

$$e^{rt} = e^{st}.$$

This equality is valid only when  $r = s$  because otherwise  $f$  would not be a scalar multiple of  $g$ . But note that  $r \neq s$  by assumption. Hence, we have a contradiction and thus  $\{f, g\}$  must be linearly independent. ■

### Exercise 1.5.21

Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be disjoint linearly independent subsets of  $V$ . Prove that  $S_1 \cup S_2$  is linearly dependent if and only if  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2) \neq \{0\}$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) We will proceed via contrapositive. Since  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2) = \{0\}$ , let  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$  such that we can find a  $w \in \text{span}(S_2)$  such that both  $v = w$  where both  $v = 0$  and  $w = 0$ . Since  $v \in \text{span}(S_1)$ , we can find a finite set of vectors  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1$  and scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i = 0.$$

Likewise,  $w \in \text{span}(S_2)$  implies that we can find  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n \in S_2$  and scalars  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n \in F$  such that

$$w = \sum_{j=1}^n b_j y_j = 0.$$

Observe that

$$v = w \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i = \sum_{j=1}^n b_j y_j.$$

Then we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i - \sum_{j=1}^n b_j y_j = 0.$$

Since  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are disjoint linearly independent sets, we know that  $x_i \notin S_2$  and  $y_j \notin S_1$  and that  $a_i = 0$  and  $b_j = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$  respectively. Hence,  $S_1 \cup S_2$  is a linearly independent set.

( $\Leftarrow$ ) We will proceed via contrapositive for this direction as well. Suppose  $S_1 \cup S_2$  is linearly independent. Then choose a finite number of distinct vectors  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in S_1 \cup S_2$  and scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that

$$\underbrace{\sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i}_{\in \text{span}(S_1)} = 0$$

with  $a_i = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . Since  $x_i \in S_1 \cup S_2$ , then either  $x_i \in S_1$  or  $x_i \in S_2$ . Without loss of generality, suppose  $x_i \in S_1$ . Then we know that  $x_i \notin S_2$  since  $S_1 \cap S_2 = \emptyset$ . Since  $S_2$  is linearly independent, choose a finite number of vectors  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m \in S_2$  and scalars  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_m \in F$  such that

$$\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ \in \text{span}(S_2)}}^m b_j y_j = 0$$

with  $b_j = 0$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq m$ . Observe that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i = \sum_{j=1}^m b_j y_j = 0.$$

Hence, we have  $\text{span}(S_1) \cap \text{span}(S_2) = \{0\}$ . ■

## 1.5 Bases and Dimension

### Exercise 1.6.11

Let  $u$  and  $v$  be distinct vectors of a vector space  $V$ . Show that if  $\{u, v\}$  is a basis for  $V$  and  $a$  and  $b$  are nonzero scalars, then both  $\{u + v, au\}$  and  $\{au, bv\}$  are also bases for  $V$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) We want to show that  $\{u + v, au\}$  and  $\{au, bv\}$  is a basis for  $V$ ; that is, we want to show that  $\{u + v, au\}$  and  $\{au, bv\}$  is both linearly independent and generates  $V$ . We will start by showing that  $\{u + v, au\}$  is linearly independent. Choose scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2$  such that

$$\delta_1(u + v) + \delta_2(au) = 0 \tag{1}$$

with  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = 0$ . Let us algebraically manipulate (1) into the following form:

$$\delta_1 u + \delta_1 v + (\delta_2 a)u = 0.$$

Since  $\{u, v\}$  is linearly independent and  $a \neq 0$ , we get that

$$\delta_1 v + (\delta_2 a)u = 0$$

implies  $\delta_1 = 0$  and  $\delta_2 a = 0$  such that  $\delta_2 = 0$ . But this implies that  $\{u + v, au\}$  is also linearly independent. To show that  $\{u + v, au\}$  spans  $V$ , it suffices to show that  $V \subseteq \text{span}\{u + v, au\}$  since the other containment  $\text{span}\{u + v, au\} \subseteq V$  follows immediately. Let  $v \in V$ . By Theorem 1.7, we know that adjoining an arbitrary vector  $w \in V$  but not in  $\text{span}\{u + v, au\}$  creates a linearly dependent set. So, we must have  $w \in \text{span}\{u + v, au\}$  and thus  $V \subseteq \text{span}\{u + v, au\}$ .

Now, we want to show that  $\{au, bv\}$  is a basis. Choose scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2$  such that

$$\delta_1(au) + \delta_2(bv) = 0 \tag{2}$$

such that  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = 0$ . We can manipulate (2) by rewriting it in the following form:

$$(\delta_1 a)u + (\delta_2 b)v = 0. \tag{3}$$

Since  $\{u, v\}$  is a linearly independent set, we know that  $\delta_1 a = \delta_2 b = 0$ . Since  $a, b \neq 0$ , this implies that  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = 0$ . Hence, the representation in (2) is trivial and thus the

set  $\{au, bv\}$  is linearly independent. Since adjoining any  $w \in V$  not in  $\{au, bv\}$  creates a linearly dependent set, we get that  $w \in \text{span}(\{au, bv\})$  by Theorem 1.7. Hence,  $\{au, bv\}$  generates  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 1.6.12

Let  $u, v$ , and  $w$  be distinct vectors of a vector space  $V$ . Show that if  $\{u, v, w\}$  is a basis for  $V$ , then  $\{u + v + w, v + w, w\}$  is also a basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** First, we prove that  $\{u + v + w, v + w, w\}$  is linearly independent. Choose  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3 \in F$  such that

$$\delta_1(u + v + w) + \delta_2(v + w) + \delta_3w = 0. \quad (1)$$

We can rewrite (1) in the following way:

$$(\delta_1u + \delta_2v + \delta_3w) + \delta_1(v + w) + \delta_2w = 0. \quad (2)$$

Since  $\{u, v, w\}$  is also a basis, we know that  $\{u, v, w\}$  is also linearly independent. Hence,  $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = \delta_3 = 0$ . Thus, (1) contains the trivial representation and so  $\{u + v + w, v + w, w\}$  is linearly independent.

Now, to prove that  $S = \{u + v + w, v + w, w\}$  generates  $V$ , it suffices to show that  $V \subseteq \text{span}(S)$ . Adjoining a vector  $x \in V$  but not in  $S$  produces a linearly independent set. Hence, Theorem 1.7 implies that  $s \in \text{span}(S)$ . Hence,  $S$  generates  $V$  and that  $S$  is a basis for  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 1.6.19

Complete the proof of Theorem 1.8.

**Proof.** See proof in notes. ■

### Exercise 1.6.20

Let  $V$  be a vector space having dimension  $n$ , and let  $S$  be a subset of  $V$  that generates  $V$ .

- (a) Prove that there is a subset of  $S$  that is a basis for  $V$ . (Be careful not to assume that  $S$  is finite.)

**Proof.** Let  $\dim(V) = n$ . Suppose  $S$  is a subset of  $V$  such that  $S$  generates  $V$ . Then  $S$  could be either  $S = \{0\}$  or  $S = \emptyset$ . In either case, we find that  $\text{span}(\emptyset) = \{0\} = V$  or  $\text{span}(\{0\}) = \{0\} = V$ . Now, suppose  $S$  contains a non-zero vector  $u_1$ . Thus, the set  $\{u_1\}$  is linearly independent. Suppose we continue adding vectors inductively  $u_2, u_3, \dots, u_k$  into this set such that this process stops at exactly  $k$  vectors. We claim that our constructed set

$$L = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}$$

is linearly independent for  $k \geq 1$ . Suppose we assume that  $L$  holds for the  $k$ th case. We want to show that it also holds for the  $k + 1$  case. Observe that

$$L = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{k+1}\} = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\} \cup \{u_{k+1}\}.$$

If  $u_{k+1} = 0$ , then  $L$  would be linearly dependent. Otherwise  $u_{k+1} \neq 0$  and so  $\{u_{k+1}\}$  is linearly independent. By inductive hypothesis, we also know that  $\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}$  is

linearly independent. Since  $\text{span}(\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}) \cap \text{span}(\{u_{k+1}\}) = \{0\}$  and that the two sets are disjoint, we know that  $\{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\} \cup \{u_{k+1}\}$  is linearly independent. This ends our induction proof.

Note that we cannot have  $S \neq L$  since  $S$  could be an infinite set. Since  $L$  is a subset of  $V$  where  $\dim(V) = n$ ,  $L$  can be extended into a basis for  $V$  by Corollary 2 of the Replacement Theorem that contains exactly  $n$  vectors. ■

(b) Prove that  $S$  contains at least  $n$  vectors.

**Proof.** Denote the basis constructed from part (a) as  $\beta$ . Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ ,  $\beta$  must contain exactly  $n$  vectors. Since  $\beta \subseteq S$  and  $S$  is a generating set for  $V$ , then  $S$  must contain at least  $n$  vectors. ■

### Exercise 1.6.21

Prove that a vectors space is infinite-dimensional if and only if it contains an infinite linearly independent subset.

**Proof.** Let  $V$  be a vector space. For the forwards direction, suppose  $V$  is an infinite-dimensional vector space. By definition,  $V$  contains a basis  $\beta$  that is infinite-dimensional. By definition,  $\beta$  is also linearly independent. Thus,  $V$  contains an infinite linearly independent set.

For the backwards direction, we proceed using the converse. Suppose  $V$  is a finite-dimensional vector space. Let  $\dim(V) = n$ . By definition,  $V$  contains a basis  $\beta$  that contains exactly  $n$  vectors. Since  $\beta$  is also linearly independent,  $\beta$  is a finite linearly independent subset. ■

### Exercise 1.6.22

Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ . Determine the necessary and sufficient conditions on  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  so that  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim(W_1)$ .

**Proof.** We must have  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$  in order for  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim(W_1)$ . Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces, we must also have  $W_1 \cap W_2$  as a subspace. Hence,  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.11. This implies that  $W_1 \cap W_2$  contains a basis  $\beta$  containing exactly  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$  vectors. Since  $\beta$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W_1$ , we know that  $\beta$  must contain at most  $\dim(W_1)$  vectors. Hence, we have  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \leq \dim(W_1)$ . Since  $W_1 \cup W_2$ , then  $W_1 \subseteq W_1 \cap W_2$ . Since  $W_1$  is finite-dimensional, let  $\alpha$  be a basis containing exactly  $\dim(W_1)$  vectors. Since  $\alpha \subseteq W_1 \cap W_2$  and  $\alpha$  is a linearly independent set,  $\alpha$  must contain at most  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$  amount of vectors. Hence,  $\dim(W_1) \leq \dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$ . Thus, we have  $\dim(W_1) = \dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$ .

Conversely, we have  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim(W_1)$ . By Theorem 1.11, we have  $W_1 \cap W_2 = W_1$ . Since  $W_1 \cap W_2 \subseteq W_2$ , we know that  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ . ■

### Exercise 1.6.23

Let  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k, v$  be vectors in a vector space  $V$ , and define  $W_1 = \text{span}(\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\})$ , and  $W_2 = \text{span}(\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k, v\})$ .

(a) Find necessary and sufficient conditions on  $v$  such that  $\dim(W_1) = \dim(W_2)$ .

**Proof.** The condition we need is  $v \in W_1$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces, we also have  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is a subspace. Hence, theorem 1.11 tells us that  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is also finite-dimensional. Suppose  $v \in W_1$ . Since  $v \in W_2$  as well, we have that  $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ . Now let  $v \in W_2$ . Then choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$  such that

$$a_1 v_1 + a_2 v_2 + \dots + a_k v_k = v.$$

But this tells us that  $v \in W_1$ . So,  $W_2 \subseteq W_1$  and thus  $W_1 = W_2$ . By theorem 1.11,  $\dim(W_1) = \dim(W_2)$ .

Conversely,  $\dim(W_1) = \dim(W_2)$ . Since  $v \in W_2$ , this also means that  $v \in W_1$  since  $W_1 = W_2$  by theorem 1.11. ■

- (b) State and prove a relationship involving  $\dim(W_1)$  and  $\dim(W_2)$  in the case that  $\dim(W_1) \neq \dim(W_2)$ .

**Proof.** If  $\dim(W_1) \neq \dim(W_2)$ , then  $v \notin W_1$ . This is just the contrapositive of the statement above. ■

### Exercise 1.6.24

Let  $f(x)$  be a polynomial of degree  $n$  in  $P_n(\mathbb{R})$ . Prove that for any  $g(x) \in P_n(\mathbb{R})$  there exists scalars  $c_0, c_1, \dots, c_n$  such that

$$g(x) = c_0 f(x) + c_1 f^{(1)}(x) + c_2 f^{(2)}(x) + \dots + c_n f^{(n)}(x),$$

where  $f^{(n)}(x)$  denotes the  $n$ th derivative of  $f(x)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $f$  is differentiable  $n$  times, we can construct the set

$$W = \{f(x), f^{(1)}(x), f^{(2)}(x), \dots, f^{(n)}(x)\}$$

containing  $n + 1$  polynomials such that no two polynomials contain the same degree (with each derivative of  $f(x)$ , the degree decreases by one). Since  $W$  is a subset of  $P_n(\mathbb{R})$  with no two polynomials having the same degree, we see that following the process seen in example 4 in section 1.5 shows that  $W$  is a linearly independent set containing  $n + 1$  vectors. Hence,  $W$  is a basis for  $P_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that any  $g(x) \in P_n(\mathbb{R})$  by Theorem 1.11. Consequently,  $g(x)$  can be expressed in terms of the vectors in  $W$  such that

$$g(x) = c_0 f(x) + c_1 f^{(1)}(x) + c_2 f^{(2)}(x) + \dots + c_n f^{(n)}(x)$$

for unique scalars  $c_0, c_1, \dots, c_n$  by Theorem 1.8. ■

### Exercise 1.6.29

- (a) Prove that if  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are finite-dimensional subspaces of a vector space  $V$ , then the subspace  $W_1 + W_2$  is finite-dimensional, and  $\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of  $V$ . Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are finite-dimensional, we also know that  $W_1 + W_2$  is finite-dimensional. Now, we will show that

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2).$$

Consider  $W_1 \cap W_2$  and note that  $W_1 \cap W_2$  being finite-dimensional implies that it

contains a basis  $\beta_0 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}$ . We can extend  $\beta_0$  into a basis for  $W_1$  by adding vectors  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_m$  into  $\beta_0$ . Denote this new set as  $\beta_1$ . Likewise, we add vectors  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_p$  into  $\beta_0$  to make a basis  $\beta_2$  for  $W_2$ . We claim that  $\beta = \beta_0 \cup \beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $W_1 + W_2$ . First, we will show that  $\beta$  is linearly independent. To do this, we need to show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i u_i + \sum_{j=1}^m b_j v_j + \sum_{\ell=1}^p \gamma_\ell w_\ell = 0. \quad (1)$$

Subtracting the third term on both sides of (1) produces the following equation:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i u_i + \sum_{j=1}^m b_j v_j = - \sum_{\ell=1}^p \gamma_\ell w_\ell.$$

Observe that the left-hand side is an element of  $W_1$  while the other side is an element of  $W_2$ . Hence, we know that the term on the right-hand side of (1) is also an element of  $W_1 \cap W_2$ . This implies that

$$- \sum_{\ell=1}^p \gamma_\ell w_\ell = \sum_{i=1}^k \delta_i u_i$$

which can be re-written as

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \delta_i u_i + \sum_{\ell=1}^p \gamma_\ell w_\ell = 0.$$

Since  $\beta_2$  is a basis for  $W_2$ , we know that  $\delta_i = 0$  and  $\gamma_\ell = 0$  implying that  $a_i = 0$  and  $\gamma_\ell = 0$ . We can re-write (1) in the following form:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i u_i + \sum_{j=1}^m b_j v_j = 0. \quad (2)$$

Since  $\beta_1$  is a linearly independent set, we get that  $a_i = 0$  and  $b_j = 0$ . Hence, (1) contains the trivial-representation which implies that  $\beta = \beta_0 \cup \beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a linearly independent set.

Now, we will show that  $\beta$  spans  $W_1 + W_2$ . Observe that  $\text{span}(\beta) \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ . Now, we will show  $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq \text{span}(\beta)$ . Suppose we take a vector  $v \in W_1 + W_2$  that is not in  $\beta$  and adjoin this vector in  $\beta$ . Note that  $\beta \cup \{v\}$  produces a linearly dependent set that by which Theorem 1.7 implies that  $v \in \text{span}(\beta)$  and we are done. Hence,  $\beta$  spans  $W_1 + W_2$  and thus  $\beta$  is a basis.

Note that  $\beta$  contains exactly  $m+p+k$  vectors. Hence, denote  $\dim(W_1 + W_2) = m+p+k$  which can be re-written as

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(W_1 + W_2) &= m + p + k \\ &= (k + m) + (k + p) - k \\ &= \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2). \end{aligned}$$

■

- (b) Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be finite-dimensional subspaces of a vector space  $V$ , and let  $V = W_1 + W_2$ . Deduce that  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  if and only if  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $V$  is a direct sum of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ . Then  $V = W_1 + W_2$  and  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$ . We need to show that  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)$ . Since  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$ , we know that it contains the empty set  $\emptyset$  as the basis for  $W_1 \cap W_2$ . Hence,  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = 0$ . Using the formula derived in part (a), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\dim(V) &= \dim(W_1 + W_2) \\ &= \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \\ &= \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)\end{aligned}$$

and we are done.

Conversely,  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)$  implies that  $V = W_1 + W_2$ . Using part (a) again, we see that the sum  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - 0$  implies that  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = 0$  and hence  $W_1 \cap W_2$  must be equal to the zero set  $\{0\}$  (which we know by definition that  $\text{span}(\emptyset) = \{0\}$ ). Hence,  $V$  is a direct sum of  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ . ■

### Exercise 1.6.31

Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a vector space  $V$  having dimensions  $m$  and  $n$ , respectively, where  $m \geq n$ .

- (a) Prove that  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \leq n$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  being subspaces of  $V$  implies that  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Hence,  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is finite-dimensional. Denote  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = k$  and let  $\beta$  be a basis for  $W_1 \cap W_2$ . Since  $W_1 \cap W_2 \subseteq W_2$ , we know that  $\beta$  must contain at most  $\dim(W_2) = n$ . Hence,  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \leq n$ . ■

- (b) Prove that  $\dim(W_1 + W_2) \leq m + n$ .

**Proof.** Using the formula found in part (a) of Exercise 1.3.29, part (a) of this exercise, and  $\dim(W_1) \geq \dim(W_2)$ , we find that

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \leq \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2).$$

### Exercise 1.6.33

- (a) Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a vector space  $V$  such that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . If  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  are bases for  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ , respectively, show that  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of  $V$ . Assume  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  are bases for  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  respectively. We need to show that  $\beta_1 \cap \beta_2 = \emptyset$  and  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $V$ .

Since  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  contain distinct linearly independent vectors, we must have  $\beta_1 \cap \beta_2 = \emptyset$ . Since  $V$  is a direct sum of the  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ , we know that  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$  by definition. Since  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  generate  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  respectively, we must have  $\text{span}(\beta_1) \cap \text{span}(\beta_2) = \{0\}$ . Now, we have the set  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  as a linearly independent set by exercise 1.5.21. Observe that  $\text{span}(\beta_1 \cup \beta_2) \subseteq V$  follows immediately. Now, take any  $v \in V$  that is not in  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  such that adjoining this vector  $v \in V$  produces a linearly dependent set. By Theorem 1.7, we have  $v \in \text{span}(\beta_1 \cup \beta_2)$ . Thus, we have  $V \subseteq \text{span}(\beta_1 \cup \beta_2)$ . Hence,  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a generating set for  $V$  and we are done. ■

- (b) Conversely, let  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  be disjoint bases for subspaces  $W_1$  and  $W_2$ , respectively, of a vector space  $V$ . Prove that if  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $V$ , then  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  be disjoint bases for subspaces  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  respectively. Suppose  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $V$ . This tells us that  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is linearly independent. Thus,  $\text{span}(\beta_1) \cap \text{span}(\beta_2) = \{0\}$  and hence  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$  since  $\text{span}(\beta_1) = W_1$  and  $\text{span}(\beta_2) = W_2$ . This tells us that  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = 0$ . Using the fact that  $\beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a basis for  $V$  that contains exactly  $\dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)$ , we get that

$$\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2).$$

By part (b) of Exercise 1.6.29, we get that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . ■

### Exercise 1.6.34

- (a) Prove that if  $W_1$  is any subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , then there exists a subspace  $W_2$  of  $V$  such that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .

**Proof.** Since  $W_1$  is a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , we know that  $W_1$  is also finite-dimensional and  $\dim(W_1) \leq \dim(V)$  by Theorem 1.11. Thus, let  $\beta$  be a basis for  $W_1$  and let  $\alpha$  be a basis for  $V$ . Since  $\alpha$  is a generating set consisting of  $\dim(V)$  vectors and  $\beta$  is a linearly independent subset of  $V$ , we can find a subset  $\sigma$  of  $\alpha$  consisting of  $\dim(V) - \dim(W_1)$  vectors such that  $\beta \cup \sigma$  generates  $V$  by the Replacement Theorem. Suppose  $\sigma$  is a basis for a subspace of  $V$  denoted by  $W_2$  for which  $\dim(W_2) = \dim(V) - \dim(W_1)$ . Note that  $\beta \cup \sigma$  contains exactly  $\dim(V)$  vectors so it is also a basis for  $V$  and that  $\beta \cap \sigma = \emptyset$ . Hence,  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2)$  for which it implies that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . ■

- (b) Let  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $W_1 = \{(a_1, 0) : a_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}$ . Give examples of two different subspaces  $W_2$  and  $W'_2$  such that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$  and  $V = W_1 \oplus W'_2$ .

**Proof. TO DO.** ■

### Exercise 1.6.35

Let  $W$  be a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , and consider the basis  $\beta_0 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\}$  for  $W$ . Let  $\beta_1 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k, u_{k+1}, \dots, u_n\}$  be an extension of this basis to a basis for  $V$ .

- (a) Prove that  $\beta_2 = \{u_{k+1} + W, u_{k+2} + W, \dots, u_n + W\}$  is a basis for  $V/W$ .

**Proof.** To show that  $\beta_2$  is a basis, we need to show that  $\beta_2$  is a linearly independent set and a generating set for  $V$ . Observe that

$$\sum_{j=k+1}^n \delta_j (u_j + W) = W \tag{1}$$

for scalars  $\delta_j$  for  $k+1 \leq j \leq n$ . Note that  $W$ , in this case, is the zero vector of  $V/W$ . Hence, (1) implies that

$$\left[ \sum_{j=k+1}^n \delta_j u_j \right] + W = W. \tag{2}$$



This implies that

$$\sum_{j=k+1}^n \delta_j u_j \in W. \quad (3)$$

Since  $W$  contains  $\beta_0$  as a basis, we can write

$$\sum_{j=k+1}^n \delta_j u_j = \sum_{i=1}^k \gamma_i u_i$$

for scalars  $\gamma_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$  which can be re-written to

$$\sum_{j=k+1}^n \delta_j u_j - \sum_{i=1}^k \gamma_i u_i = 0$$

where all  $\delta_j = 0$  and  $\gamma_i = 0$  since  $\beta_1$  is a basis for  $V$ . Since all  $\delta_j = 0$ , we get that  $\beta_2$  is a linearly independent set.

To show that  $\beta_2$  is a generating set for  $V/W$ , we need to show that  $\text{span}(\beta_2) = V/W$ . Note that the containment  $\text{span}(\beta_2) \subseteq V/W$ . To show that other containment, let  $v \in V$  not in  $\beta_2$ . Observe that adjoining  $v$  to  $\beta_2$  creates a linearly dependent set. By Theorem 1.7, we have  $v \in \text{span}(\beta_2)$ . Hence,  $V \subseteq \text{span}(\beta_2)$ . ■

- (b) Derive a formula relating  $\dim(V)$ ,  $\dim(W)$ , and  $\dim(V/W)$ .

**Proof.** In part (a), we see that  $\beta_2$  contains  $n$  amount of vectors. Unioning this set with  $\beta_1$  creates a basis for  $V$  that contains  $\dim(W) + \dim(V/W)$  vectors. Hence, we must have

$$\dim(V/W) = \dim(V) - \dim(W).$$
■



## Chapter 2

# Linear Transformations and Matrices

### 2.1 Linear Transformations, Null spaces, and Ranges

#### Exercise 2.1.1

Label the following statements as true or false. In each part,  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional vector spaces (over  $F$ ), and  $T$  is a function from  $V$  to  $W$ .

- (a) If  $T$  is linear, then  $T$  preserves sums and scalar products.

**Solution.** True. This is by definition. ■

- (b) If  $T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y)$ , then  $T$  is linear.

**Solution.** False. We also need to have  $T(cx) = cT(x)$  where  $x \in V$  and  $c \in F$  in order for  $T$  to be a linear map. ■

- (c) If  $T$  is one-to-one if and only if the only vector  $x$  such that  $T(x) = 0$  is  $x = 0$ .

**Solution.** True. This is Theorem 2.2. ■

- (d) If  $T$  is linear, then  $T(0_V) = 0_W$ .

**Solution.** True by properties of linear maps. ■

- (e) If  $T$  is linear, then  $\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \dim(W)$ .

**Solution.** False. This only happens when  $V$  and  $W$  have equal dimensions. ■

- (f) If  $T$  is linear, then  $T$  carries linearly independent subsets of  $V$  onto linearly independent subsets of  $W$ .

**Solution.** False. We need  $T$  to be injective in order to make this valid. ■

- (g) If  $T, U : V \rightarrow W$  are both linear and agree on a basis for  $V$ , then  $T = U$ .

**Solution.** True by Corollary to Theorem 2.6. ■

- (h) Given  $x_1, x_2 \in V$  and  $y_1, y_2 \in W$ , there exists a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that  $T(x_1) = y_1$  and  $T(x_2) = y_2$ .

---

**Solution.** False. We need to have a basis for  $V$ . ■

For Exercises 2 through 6, prove that  $T$  is a linear transformation, and find bases for both  $N(T)$  and  $R(T)$ . Then compute the nullity and rank of  $T$ , and verify the dimension theorem. Finally, use the appropriate theorems in this section to determine whether  $T$  is injective or surjective.

### Exercise 2.1.2

$T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $T(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1 - a_2, 2a_3)$ .

**Solution.** Our first goal is to show that  $T$  is linear. Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^3$  and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  where  $x = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx + y) &= T(ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_2, ca_3 + b_3) \\ &= ([ca_1 + b_1] - [ca_2 + b_2], 2(ca_3 + b_3)) \\ &= ([ca_1 - ca_2] + [b_1 - b_2], 2ca_3 + 2b_3) \\ &= (c(a_1 - a_2), 2ca_3) + (b_1 - b_2, 2b_3) \\ &= c(a_1 - a_2, 2a_3) + (b_1 - b_2, 2b_3) \\ &= cT(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is linear. Now, let's compute the bases for both  $N(T)$  and  $R(T)$ . To compute  $N(T)$ , we need to have all the solutions needed for

$$T(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1 - a_2, 2a_3) = 0$$

to hold. Solving the equation above gives us the following solutions

$$a_1 = a_2 \text{ and } a_3 = 0.$$

Hence, for any  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$N(T) = \{(a, a, 0) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Note that  $N(T)$  is generated by the linearly independent set  $\{(1, 1, 0)\}$ . Thus,  $\{(1, 1, 0)\}$  is a basis for  $N(T)$  and contains 1 vector. So,  $\text{nullity}(T) = 1$  by the Dimension Theorem. This immediately tells us that  $T$  is not injective since  $\text{nullity}(T) \neq 0$  and hence  $\text{rank}(T) = 2$ . But  $\text{rank}(T) = \dim(\mathbb{R}^2)$ . Hence,  $T$  must be surjective. Since  $R(T) = \mathbb{R}^2$ , the basis is just  $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.8

$T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  defined by  $T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 + a_2, 0, 2a_1 - a_2)$ .

**Solution.** First, we show that  $T$  is linear. Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $x = (a_1, a_2)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2)$ . Let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . Note that

$$cx + y = (ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_2).$$

Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
T(cx + y) &= ((ca_1 + b_1) + (ca_2 + b_2), 0, 2(ca_1 + b_1) - (ca_2 + b_2)) \\
&= (c(a_1 + a_2) + (b_1 + b_2), 0, c(2a_1 - a_2) + (b_1 - b_2)) \\
&= (c(a_1 + a_2), c(2a_1 - a_2)) + (b_1 + b_2, 2b_1 - b_2) \\
&= c(a_1 + a_2, 2a_1 - a_2) + (b_1 + b_2, 2b_1 - b_2) \\
&= cT(x) + T(y).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is linear. ■

### Exercise 2.1.7

Prove properties 1, 2, 3, and 4 on page 65.

**Proof.** See proof in notes. ■

### Exercise 2.1.8

Prove that the transformations in Example 2 and 3 are linear.

**Proof.** First we prove that  $T_\theta : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by

$$T_\theta(a_1, a_2) = (a_1 \cos \theta - a_2 \sin \theta, a_1 \cos \theta + a_2 \sin \theta)$$

is linear. Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $x = (a_1, a_2)$  and  $y = (b_1, b_2)$ . Let  $c \in F$  such that  $cx = (ca_1, ca_2)$ . To make the computation less difficult, we have

$$cx + y = (ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_2).$$

Using the definition  $T_\theta$  now, we have that

$$\begin{aligned}
T_\theta(cx + y) &= ((ca_1 + b_1) \cos \theta - (ca_2 + b_2) \sin \theta, \\
&\quad (ca_1 + b_1) \cos \theta + (ca_2 + b_2) \sin \theta) \\
&= (c(a_1 \cos \theta - a_2 \sin \theta) + (b_1 \cos \theta - b_2 \sin \theta), \\
&\quad c(a_1 \cos \theta + a_2 \sin \theta) + (b_1 \cos \theta + b_2 \sin \theta)) \\
&= c(a_1 \cos \theta - a_2 \sin \theta, a_1 \cos \theta + a_2 \sin \theta) \\
&\quad + (b_1 \cos \theta - b_2 \sin \theta, b_1 \cos \theta + b_2 \sin \theta) \\
&= cT_\theta(a_1, a_2) + T_\theta(b_1, b_2) \\
&= cT_\theta(x) + T_\theta(y).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we get that  $T_\theta$  is linear.

Using the same process, we show that  $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  defined by  $T(a_1, a_2) = (a_1, -a_2)$  is linear. That is, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
T(cx + y) &= (ca_1 + b_1, -(ca_2 + b_2)) \\
&= (ca_1 + b_1, -ca_2 - b_2) \\
&= c(a_1, -a_2) + (b_1, -b_2) \\
&= cT(a_1, a_2) + T(b_1, b_2) \\
&= cT(x) + T(y).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is also linear.

Now, let's compute  $N(T)$ . We need to find solutions to the scalars  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  such that

$$(a_1 + a_2, 0, 2a_1 - a_2) = (0, 0, 0).$$

Equating entries, we get the following system of linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 + a_2 &= 0 \\ 2a_1 - a_2 &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Using elimination, we get that  $a_1 = 0$  and  $a_2 = 0$ . This tells us that  $N(T) = \{0\}$  and that  $T$  is injective by Theorem 2.4. Note that  $\emptyset$  is a basis for  $N(T)$ . Furthermore,  $N(T) = \{0\}$  tells us that  $\text{nullity}(T) = 0$ . Using the dimension theorem, this means that  $\text{rank}(T) = 2$ .

To find the basis of  $R(T)$ , note that  $\beta = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and that  $T(\beta)$  generates  $R(T)$ . Thus,

$$T(\beta) = \{(1, 0, 2), (1, 0, -1)\}$$

which solving the following equation

$$a(1, 0, 2) + b(1, 0, -1) = (0, 0, 0)$$

for scalars  $a$  and  $b$  yields  $a = 0$  and  $b = 0$ . Hence,  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $R(T)$ . ■

#### Exercise 2.1.10

Suppose that  $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  is linear,  $T(1, 0) = (1, 4)$ , and  $T(1, 1) = (2, 5)$ .

**Solution.** First, observe that  $(2, 3) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  can be expressed in terms of a linear combination of  $(1, 0)$  and  $(1, 1)$ . Hence, we need to find scalars  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$a(1, 0) + b(1, 1) = (2, 3).$$

Solving for the scalars gives us the solutions  $a = -1$  and  $b = 3$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we can now compute  $T(2, 3)$  by doing the following:

$$\begin{aligned}T(2, 3) &= T(-(1, 0) + 3(1, 1)) \\ &= -T(1, 0) + 3T(1, 1) \\ &= -(1, 4) + 3(2, 5) \\ &= (5, 11).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we get that  $T(2, 3) = (5, 11)$ .

Note that the domain and codomain have equal finite dimensions. Hence, Theorem 2.5 tells us that  $T$  must be one-to-one (injective). ■

#### Exercise 2.1.11

Prove that there exists a linear transformation  $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  such that  $T(1, 1) = (1, 0, 2)$  and  $T(2, 3) = (1, -1, 4)$ . What is  $T(8, 11)$ ?

**Solution.** Note that  $\beta = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . By Theorem 2.6,  $T$  being linear implies that there exists a unique linear transformation  $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  such that  $T(1, 1) =$

$(1, 0, 2)$  and  $T(2, 3) = (1, -1, 4)$ .

To compute  $T(8, 11)$ , we need to find scalars  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$a(1, 1) + b(2, 3) = (8, 11).$$

Solving for  $a$  and  $b$  gives us the following linear combination:

$$2(1, 1) + 3(2, 3) = (8, 11).$$

Since  $T$  is linear, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} T(8, 11) &= T(2(1, 1) + 3(2, 3)) \\ &= 2T(1, 1) + 3T(2, 3) \\ &= 2(1, 0, 2) + 3(1, -1, 4) \\ &= (5, -3, 16) \end{aligned}$$

■

### Exercise 2.1.13

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces, let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be linear, and let  $\{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k\}$  be a linearly independent subset of  $R(T)$ . If  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  is chosen so that  $T(v_i) = w_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$  then  $S$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** Consider

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i = 0 \tag{1}$$

for some scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k \in F$ . In order to show that  $S$  is linearly independent, we need to show that  $a_i = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we get that  $T(0) = 0$  implies

$$T\left(\sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i\right) = 0.$$

Since  $T$  is linear and  $S$  is chosen so that  $T(v_i) = w_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , we get that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i T(v_i) = 0 \Leftrightarrow \sum_{i=1}^k a_i w_i = 0.$$

Since  $\{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k\}$  is linearly independent, we must have  $a_i = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . But this tells us that (1) must have the trivial representation. Hence,  $S$  must also be linearly independent. ■

### Exercise 2.1.14

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces and  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be linear.

- (a) Prove that  $T$  is injective if and only if  $T$  carries linearly independent subsets of  $V$  onto linearly independent subsets of  $W$ .

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Let  $T$  be injective. Since  $\mathcal{W}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W$ , we

have  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n \in \mathcal{W}$  and scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i w_i = 0.$$

Since  $T(v_i) = w_i$  and  $T$  is linear, we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i T(v_i) = 0 \Leftrightarrow T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right) = 0$$

with  $v_i \in S$  being linearly independent. Since  $T$  is injective, we must have

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i = 0$$

with  $v_i \in S$  being linearly independent. Hence,  $T$  carries  $S$  onto  $\mathcal{W}$ .

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Suppose  $T$  carries linearly independent subsets of  $V$  onto linearly independent subsets of  $W$ . Our goal is to show that  $T$  is injective. Suppose

$$T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right) = T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i\right) \quad (1)$$

for some scalars  $a_i, b_i$  and vectors  $v_i \in S$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Since  $T$  is linear and  $T : S \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$  is onto, we can re-write (1) into the following form:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k a_i T(v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^k b_i T(v_i) \quad (2)$$

which manipulating again, we get that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k (a_i - b_i) T(v_i) = 0. \quad (3)$$

Since  $T(v_i) \in W$  and  $W$  is linearly independent, we must have  $a_i - b_i = 0$  if and only if  $a_i = b_i$ . Hence, we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i$$

and so  $T$  must be injective. ■

- (b) Suppose that  $T$  is injective and that  $S$  is a subset of  $V$ . Prove that  $S$  is linearly independent if and only if  $T(S)$  is linearly independent.

**Proof.** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) In order to show that  $T(S)$  is linearly independent, we must show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i T(v_i) = 0 \quad (1)$$

contains the trivial-representation. Since  $T$  is linear, we can write (1) into the following form

$$T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right) = 0.$$



This implies that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i \in N(T).$$

Since  $T$  is injective, we know that  $N(T) = \{0\}$  (by Theorem 2.4), and so we must have

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i = 0. \quad (2)$$

But  $v_i \in S$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  is linearly independent, and so  $a_i = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . This tells us that (1) contains the trivial-representation. Hence,  $T(S)$  is linearly independent.

( $\Rightarrow$ ) Suppose  $T(S)$  is linearly independent. Then observe that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i T(v_i) = 0$$

for some scalars  $a_i$  and  $T(v_i) \in T(S)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  such that  $a_i = 0$ . Since  $T$  is linear and  $T$  is injective, we can write

$$T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right) = 0 \Leftrightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i = 0.$$

Since  $a_i = 0$  and  $v_i \in S$ , we also find that  $S$  is a linearly independent set. ■

- (c) Suppose  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$  and  $T$  is injective and surjective. Prove that  $T(\beta) = \{T(v_1), T(v_2), \dots, T(v_n)\}$  is a basis for  $W$ .

**Proof.** Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ , we get that  $\text{span}(T(\beta)) = R(T)$  by Theorem 2.2. Since  $T$  is surjective, we have  $R(T) = W$ , so  $\text{span}(T(\beta)) = W$ . Hence,  $T(\beta)$  generates  $W$ . Since  $\beta$  is a linearly independent subset of  $V$  and  $T$  is an injective linear map, we must also have  $T(\beta)$  as a linearly independent subset of  $W$  by part (b). Hence,  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $W$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.15

Recall the definition of  $P(\mathbb{R})$  on page 10. Define

$$T : P(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow P(\mathbb{R}) \text{ by } T(f(x)) = \int_0^x f(t) \, dt.$$

Prove that  $T$  is linear and injective, but not surjective.

**Proof.** First, we show that  $T : P(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow P(\mathbb{R})$  defined by

$$T(f(x)) = \int_0^x f(t) \, dt.$$

Let  $cf(x) + g(x) \in P(\mathbb{R})$  where  $c \in F$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T(cf(x) + g(x)) &= \int_0^x [cf(t) + g(t)] dt \\ &= \int_0^x cf(t) dt + \int_0^x g(t) dt \\ &= c \int_0^x f(t) dt + \int_0^x g(t) dt \\ &= cT(f(x)) + T(g(x)). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T : P(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow P(\mathbb{R})$  is a linear map. Let  $f(x), g(x) \in P(\mathbb{R})$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} T(f(x)) &= T(g(x)) \\ \int_0^x f(t) dt &= \int_0^x g(t) dt \\ \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \int_0^x f(t) dt \right] &= \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \int_0^x g(t) dt \right] \\ f(x) &= g(x). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is an injective map. To see why  $T$  fails to be surjective, observe that  $1 \in P(\mathbb{R})$  but we cannot find a polynomial  $f(x)$  such that  $T(f(x)) = 1$ ; that is, the integration of any polynomial can never yield 1. ■

### Exercise 2.1.16

Let  $T : P(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow P(\mathbb{R})$  be defined by  $T(f(x)) = f'(x)$ . Recall that  $T$  is linear. Prove that  $T$  is surjective, but not injective.

**Proof.** Let  $T : P(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow P(\mathbb{R})$  be defined by  $T(f(x)) = f'(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]$ . For  $cf(x) + g(x) \in P(\mathbb{R})$  where  $c \in F$ , observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T(cf(x) + g(x)) &= \frac{d}{dx}[cf(x) + g(x)] \\ &= \frac{d}{dx}[cf(x)] + \frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] \\ &= c \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] + \frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] \\ &= cT(f(x)) + T(g(x)). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is a linear map. Now, we want to show that  $T$  is surjective. Define

$$f(x) = \int_0^x g(t) dt.$$

Then

$$T(f(x)) = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] = \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \int_0^x g(t) dt \right] = g(x)$$

by the Second Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. Hence,  $T$  is surjective.

To show that  $T$  is not injective, let  $x^n + a, x^n + b \in P(\mathbb{R})$  where  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $a \neq b$  and  $n > 0$ . Clearly, we have  $x^n + a \neq x^n + b$ . But, we have

$$T(x^n + a) = \frac{d}{dx}[x^n + a] = nx^{n-1}$$

and

$$T(x^n + b) = \frac{d}{dx}[x^n + b] = nx^{n-1}.$$

Note that  $x^n + a \neq x^n + b$  yet  $T(x^n + a) = T(x^n + b)$ . Hence,  $T$  is not injective. ■

### Exercise 2.1.17

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces and  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be linear.

- (a) Prove that if  $\dim(V) < \dim(W)$ , then  $T$  cannot be surjective.

**Proof.** Using the Dimension Theorem, we find that

$$\text{rank}(T) = \dim(V) - \text{nullity}(T).$$

Since  $\dim(V) < \dim(W)$ , we find that

$$\text{rank}(T) < \dim(W) - \text{nullity}(T) < \dim(W).$$

Hence,  $T$  cannot be surjective in this case. ■

- (b) Prove that if  $\dim(V) > \dim(W)$ , then  $T$  cannot be injective.

**Proof.** Using the Dimension Theorem again and  $\dim(V) > \dim(W)$ , we find that

$$\text{nullity}(T) = \dim(V) - \text{rank}(T) > \dim(W) - \text{rank}(T) > 0.$$

This means that  $\text{nullity}(T)$  can never be zero, otherwise  $T$  is injective. Hence,  $T$  can never be injective if  $\dim(V) > \dim(W)$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.20

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces with subspaces  $V_1$  and  $W_1$ , respectively. If  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is linear, prove that  $T(V_1)$  is a subspace of  $W$  and that  $\{x \in V : T(x) \in W_1\}$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

**Proof.** First, we prove that  $T(V_1)$  is a subspace of  $W$ . Let  $x, y \in T(V_1)$  and  $c \in F$ . Since  $V_1$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we know that  $0_V \in V_1$ ,  $x + y \in V_1$ , and  $cx \in V_1$ . Observe that  $T(0_V) = 0_W$  since  $T$  is linear. Hence,  $0_W \in T(V_1)$ . Let  $x, y \in T(V_1)$ . There exists  $z, w \in V_1$  such that  $x = T(z)$  and  $y = T(w)$ . Since  $z + w \in V_1$  and  $T$  is linear, we must have  $T(z + w) = T(z) + T(w) = x + y$ . This tells us that  $x + y \in T(V_1)$ . Now, let  $c \in F$ . Since  $cz \in V_1$  and  $T$  is linear, we must have  $T(cz) = cT(z) = cx$ . Hence,  $cx \in T(V_1)$ . Thus,  $T(V_1)$  is a subspace of  $W$ .

Now, we show  $S = \{x \in V : T(x) \in W_1\}$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Since  $0_W \in W_1$  (because  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $W$ ) and  $T$  is linear, we have that  $T(0_V) = 0_W$ . Hence,  $0_V \in S$ . Now, let  $x, y \in S$ . Hence,  $T(x), T(y) \in W_1$  implies  $T(x) + T(y) \in W_1$  since  $W_1$  is a subspace of  $W$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we have  $T(x) + T(y) = T(x + y)$ , and so  $x + y \in S$ . Now, let  $c \in F$  and  $x \in S$ . Again,  $W_1$  is a subspace so  $cT(x) \in W_1$ . Thus,  $T$  being linear implies that  $cT(x) = T(cx)$ . Hence,  $cx \in S$ . Thus,  $S$  is a subspace of  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.21

Let  $V$  be the vector space of sequences described in Example 5 of Section 1.2. Define the functions  $T, U : V \rightarrow V$  by

$$T(a_1, a_2, \dots) = (a_2, a_3, \dots) \quad \text{and} \quad U(a_1, a_2, \dots) = (0, a_1, a_2, \dots).$$

$T$  and  $U$  are called the **left shift** and **right shift** operators on  $V$ , respectively.

(a) Prove that  $T$  and  $U$  are linear.

**Proof.** Let  $(x_n), (y_n) \in V$  with  $(x_n) = (a_1, a_2, \dots)$  and  $(y_n) = (b_1, b_2, \dots)$ . Let  $c \in F$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx_n + y_n) &= (ca_2 + b_2, ca_3 + b_3, \dots) \\ &= (ca_2, ca_3, \dots) + (b_2, b_3, \dots) \\ &= c(a_2, a_3, \dots) + (b_2, b_3, \dots) \\ &= cT(x_n) + T(y_n). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is a linear map.

Now with  $U : V \rightarrow V$  observe that

$$\begin{aligned} U(cx_n + y_n) &= (0, ca_1 + b_1, ca_2 + b_1, \dots) \\ &= (0, ca_1, ca_2, \dots) + (0, b_1, b_2, \dots) \\ &= c(0, a_1, a_2, \dots) + (0, b_1, b_2, \dots) \\ &= cU(x_n) + U(y_n). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $U : V \rightarrow V$  is a linear map. ■

(b) Prove that  $T$  is surjective, but not injective.

**Proof.** Let  $\{b_n\} \in V$ . Define this sequence as

$$\{b_n\} = (b_1, b_2, \dots).$$

We can construct a sequence such that  $b_i = a_{i+1}$  for  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ . Hence,

$$(b_1, b_2, \dots) = (a_2, a_3, \dots).$$

By definition of  $T$ , we get that

$$T(a_1, a_2, \dots) = (a_2, a_3, \dots) = (b_1, b_2, \dots).$$

Since  $\{b_n\} \in V$ , we get that  $T$  is surjective.

To see why  $T$  is not injective, suppose we take two sequences distinct  $\{x_n\}, \{y_n\} \in V$  defined by

$$\{x_n\} = (a, 0, 0, \dots) \text{ and } \{y_n\} = (b, 0, 0, \dots)$$

respectively. But we have  $T(\{x_n\}) = 0_n = T(\{y_n\})$  where  $0_n$  is the sequence with all terms being zero. Hence,  $T$  cannot be injective. ■

(c) Prove that  $U$  is injective, but not surjective.

**Proof.** Let  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\} \in V$  defined by

$$\{a_n\} = (a_1, a_2, \dots) \text{ and } \{b_n\} = (b_1, b_2, \dots).$$

Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} U(a_1, a_2, \dots) &= U(b_1, b_2, \dots) \\ (0, a_1, a_2, \dots) &= (0, b_1, b_2, \dots). \end{aligned}$$

Equating entries, we get that  $a_i = b_i$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{N}$  and so,  $\{a_n\} = \{b_n\}$ . Hence,  $U$  is injective.

Observe that  $(x_1, 0, 0, \dots) \in V$  but there does not exist a sequence  $\{x_n\} \in V$  such that  $U(x_1, x_2, \dots) = (x_1, 0, 0)$ . Hence,  $U$  is not surjective. ■

### Exercise 2.1.22

Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be linear. Show that there exist scalars  $a, b$ , and  $c$  such that  $T(x, y, z) = ax + by + cz$  for all  $(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . Can you generalize this result for  $T : F^n \rightarrow F$ ? State and prove an analogous result for  $T : F^n \rightarrow F^m$ .

**Proof.** Let  $(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3$  arbitrary. Observe that

$$(x, y, z) = (x, 0, 0) + (0, y, 0) + (0, 0, z) = xe_1 + ye_2 + ze_3.$$

since  $\beta = \{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we know, by Theorem 2.2, that  $\text{span}(T(\beta)) = R(T)$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T(x, y, z) &= T(xe_1 + ye_2 + ze_3) \\ &= T(e_1)x + T(e_2)y + T(e_3)z. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we know that  $T(e_1), T(e_2), T(e_3) \in \mathbb{R}$  are just scalars, so denote  $T(e_1) = a, T(e_2) = b, T(e_3) = c$ . Hence, we have

$$T(x, y, z) = ax + by + cz.$$

Now for the  $n$ th case, our basis  $\beta$  for  $F^n$  now contains  $n$ . So, we have

$$T(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n) = a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \dots + a_nx_n$$

for some scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$  using the same argument above. ■

### Exercise 2.1.23

Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be linear. Describe geometrically the possibilities for the null space of  $T$ .

**Proof.** By definition of  $T$  described in Exercise 2.1.22, the null space is described as the set

$$N(T) = \{ax + by + cz = 0 : a, b, c \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } (x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}.$$

This represents two vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  where we fix  $(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3$  such that we find a  $(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3$  such that the two vectors are perpendicular to each other. ■

**Definition 2.1.1 (Projections).** Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of  $V$  such that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ . A function  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is called the **projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$**  if, for  $x = x_1 + x_2$  with  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ , we have  $T(x) = x_1$ .

---

**Exercise 2.1.24**

Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ . Include figures for each of the following parts.

- (a) Find a formula for  $T(a, b)$ , where  $T$  represents the projection on the  $y$ -axis along the  $x$ -axis.

**Solution.** Since  $(a, b) = (a, 0) + (0, b)$  and  $T$  represents the projection on the  $y$ -axis along the  $x$ -axis, we must have  $T(a, b) = (0, b)$  by definition of projections. ■

- (b) Find a formula for  $T(a, b)$ , where  $T$  represents the projection on the  $y$ -axis along the line  $L = \{(s, s) : s \in \mathbb{R}\}$ .

**Solution.** Observe that  $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  can be written in the following form:

$$(a, b) = (a, 0) + (0, b) = (a, a - a) + (0, b) = (0, b - a) + (a, a).$$

So,  $T(a, b) = (0, b - a)$  by definition of projection. ■

**Exercise 2.1.25**

Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ .

- (a) If  $T(a, b, c) = (a, b, 0)$ , show that  $T$  is the projection on the  $xy$ -plane along the  $z$ -axis.

**Solution.** Observe that  $(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3$  can be written in the following form:

$$(a, b, c) = \underbrace{(a, b, 0)}_{\in \mathbb{R}^2} + \underbrace{(0, 0, c)}_{z\text{-axis}}. \quad (1)$$

Since  $T(a, b, c) = (a, b, 0)$ , we know that  $T$  represents the projection on the  $xy$ -plane along the  $z$ -axis. ■

- (b) Find a formula for  $T(a, b, c)$ , where  $T$  represents the projection on the  $z$ -axis along the  $xy$ -plane.

**Solution.** Let  $(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . Then the projection on the  $z$ -axis along the  $xy$ -plane should be  $T(a, b, c) = (0, 0, c)$  since  $(a, b, c) = (a, b, 0) + (0, 0, c)$  where  $(a, b, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $(0, 0, c)$  is a point on the  $z$ -axis. ■

- (c) If  $T(a, b, c) = (a - c, b, 0)$ , show that  $T$  is the projection on the  $xy$ -plane along the line  $L = \{(a, 0, a) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ .

**Solution.** Let  $(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . Then we can write this vector in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} (a, b, c) &= (a, b, 0) + (0, 0, c) \\ &= (a - c + c, b, 0) + (0, 0, c) \\ &= (a - c, b, 0) + (c, 0, c) \end{aligned}$$

where  $(a - c, b, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $(c, 0, c) \in L$ . Since  $T(a, b, c) = (a - c, b, 0)$ ,  $T$  must be the projection on the  $xy$ -plane along the line  $L$ . ■

---

**Exercise 2.1.26**

Using the notation in the definition above, assume that  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ .

- (a) Prove that  $T$  is linear and  $W_1 = \{x \in V : T(x) = x\}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . We need to show that  $T$  is linear. Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , we must have  $x = x_1 + x_2$  and  $y = y_1 + y_2$  with  $T(x) = x_1$  and  $T(y) = y_1$  respectively. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} cx + y &= c(x_1 + x_2) + (y_1 + y_2) \\ &= (cx_1 + y_1) + (cx_2 + y_2). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $c \in F$ . Since  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , we must have

$$T(cx + y) = cx_1 + y_1 = cT(x) + T(y).$$

Hence,  $T$  is linear.

Now, let's show that  $W_1 = \{x \in V : T(x) = x\}$ . Denote  $S = \{x \in V : T(x) = x\}$ . Let  $x \in W_1$ . Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$  and  $x = x + 0_V$ , we have  $T(x) = x$ . Hence,  $W_1 \subseteq S$ . Conversely, let  $x \in S$ . Then  $T(x) = x$ . Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , this would mean that  $x \in W_1$ . Hence,

$$W_1 = \{x \in V : T(x) = x\}.$$

■

- (b) Prove that  $W_1 = R(T)$  and  $W_2 = N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Let's show that  $W_1 = R(T)$ . Let  $x \in W_1$ . Since  $W_1 \subseteq V$ , we know that  $x \in V$  where  $x = x + 0_V$ . Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , we have that  $T(x) = x$ . Hence,  $x \in R(T)$ . Conversely,  $x \in R(T)$ . Then for some  $z \in V$ , we have  $T(x) = z$ . Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , we have that  $x = z + 0_V$  implies that  $z \in W_1$ . Thus,  $x \in W_1$  and so,

$$W_1 = R(T).$$

Now, let's show that  $W_2 = N(T)$ . Let  $x \in W_2$ . Since  $T$  is a projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , we have  $x = 0_V + x$  implies  $T(x) = 0_V$ . This tells us that  $x \in N(T)$ . On the other hand, assume  $x \in N(T)$ . Then  $T(x) = 0_V$ . Since  $x \in V$  and  $W_1 + W_2 = V$ , we have  $x = x_1 + x_2$  with  $x_1 \in W_1$  and  $x_2 \in W_2$ . Since  $T(x) = 0_V$ , either  $x_1 = 0$  or  $x_2 = 0$ . Assume  $x_2 = 0$ , then  $x = x_1$  and  $x \in W_1$  which is a contradiction. If  $x_1 = 0$ , then  $x_2 = x$ , so  $T(x_2) = 0_V$ . Hence,  $x \in W_2$ . Thus,

$$W_2 = N(T).$$

■

- (c) Describe  $T$  if  $W_1 = V$ .

**Solution.** If  $W_1 = V$ , then we simply have  $T(x) = x$  as described in part (a). Moreover,  $N(T) = \{0\}$  since  $V = W_1 + W_2$  implies  $N(T) = W_2 = \{0\}$ . Thus,  $T$  must be injective. ■

- (d) Describe  $T$  if  $W_1$  is the zero subspace.

**Solution.** If  $W_1$  is the zero subspace, then  $\dim(W_1) = 0$ . This implies that  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim(W_1) + \dim(W_2) + \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim(W_2)$  (note that  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = 0$ ). So,  $\dim(V) = \dim(W_2)$  implies that  $V = W_2$ . Since  $T$  is a projection on  $W_1$  along  $W_2$ , then  $T(x) = 0_V$  for all  $x \in V$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.27

Suppose that  $W$  is a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ .

- (a) Prove that there exists a subspace  $W'$  and a function  $T : V \rightarrow V$  such that  $T$  is a projection on  $W$  along  $W'$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional and  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we know by Exercise 1.6.34 that there exists a subspace  $W'$  such that  $W_1 \oplus W_2 = V$ . Note that any  $x \in V$  can be defined by  $x = x_1 + x_2$  where  $x_1 \in W$  and  $x_2 \in W'$ . Define the function

$$T : V \rightarrow V \text{ by } T(x) = x_1.$$

Since  $W + W' = V$  and  $W \cap W' = \{0\}$ , we get a unique representation of any  $x \in V$ . Thus, we have that  $T$  is well-defined and that  $T$  is a projection on  $W$  along  $W'$ . ■

**Remark.** I am not quite sure how to show that  $T$  is a projection here. I am not sure if showing that  $T$  is well-defined is enough to do it.

- (b) Give an example of a subspace  $W$  of a vector space  $V$  such that there are two projections on  $W$  along two (distinct) subspaces.

**Solution.** ■

**Definition 2.1.2 (Invariance).** Let  $V$  be a vector space, and let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be linear. A subspace  $W$  of  $V$  is said to be  **$T$ -invariant** if  $T(x) \in W$  for every  $x \in W$ , that is,  $T(W) \subseteq W$ . If  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we define the **restriction of  $T$  on  $W$**  to be the function  $T_W : W \rightarrow W$  defined by  $T_W(x) = T(x)$  for all  $x \in W$ .

Exercises 28-32 assume that  $W$  is a subspace of a vector space  $V$  and that  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is linear. *Warning:* Do not assume that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant or that  $T$  is a projection unless explicitly stated.

### Exercise 2.1.28

Prove that the subspaces  $\{0\}$ ,  $V$ ,  $R(T)$ , and  $N(T)$  are all  $T$ -invariant.

- Proof.** (a) Let  $x \in \{0\}$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we must have  $x = 0_V$  such that  $T(0_V) = 0_V$ . Hence,  $\{0\}$  is  $T$ -invariant.
- (b) Since  $V$  is a subspace of itself, and  $T(x) \in V$  for all  $x \in V$ , we have that  $V$  is  $T$ -invariant.
- (c) Let  $x \in R(T)$ . Then there exists  $w \in V$  such that  $T(x) = w \in R(T)$ . Hence,  $R(T)$  is  $T$ -invariant.
- (d) Let  $x \in N(T)$ . Then by definition of  $N(T)$ , we have  $T(x) = 0_V \in N(T)$ . Hence,  $N(T)$  is  $T$ -invariant.



---

**Exercise 2.1.29**

If  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, prove that  $T_W$  is linear.

**Proof.** Since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we have a restriction of  $T$  on  $W$  such that  $T_W : W \rightarrow W$  is defined by  $T_W(x) = T(x)$  for all  $x \in W$ . Let  $cx + y \in W$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we know that

$$\begin{aligned} T_W(cx + y) &= T(cx + y) \\ &= cT(x) + T(y) \\ &= cT_W(x) + T_W(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T_W$  is linear. ■

**Exercise 2.1.30**

Suppose that  $T$  is the projection on  $W$  along some subspace  $W'$ . Prove that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant and that  $T_W = I_W$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in W$ . Since  $T$  is the projection on  $W$  along some subspace  $W'$ , we must have  $T(x) = x$ . Since  $x \in W$ , this must imply that  $T(x) \in W$  as well and so, we have that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant. In fact, the linearity of  $T$  and  $W$  being  $T$ -invariant implies that  $T$  is linear (by exercise 29) and that

$$T_W(x) = T(x) = x = I_W(x)$$

for any arbitrary  $x \in W$ . Hence, we also have that  $T_W = I_W$ . ■

**Exercise 2.1.31**

Suppose that  $V = R(T) \oplus W$  and  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant.

(a) Prove that  $W \subseteq N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $v \in V$ . Since  $V$  is  $T$ -invariant, we must have  $T(v) \in V$ . Using the fact that  $V = R(T) \oplus W$ , and that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant,  $T(v)$  can be expressed in the following way:

$$T(v) = T(y) + T(w) \tag{1}$$

with  $T(y) \in R(T)$  and  $T(w) \in W$ . Subtracting  $T(y)$  on both sides and using the linearity of  $T$ , we get that

$$T(v) - T(y) = T(w) \Leftrightarrow T(v - y) = T(w).$$

Note that  $T(v - y) \in R(T)$  and  $T(w) \in W$ . Since  $R(T) \cap W = \{0\}$  and  $T(w) \in R(T) \cap W$ , this means that  $T(w) = 0$ . Hence,  $W \subseteq N(T)$ . ■

(b) Show that if  $V$  is finite-dimensional, then  $W = N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional, we can use the dimension theorem to write

$$\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \dim(V).$$

Furthermore, we can use Exercise 1.6.29 and that  $\dim(R(T) \cap W) = 0$  to write that

$$\begin{aligned}\dim(V) &= \dim(R(T) + W) \\ &= \text{rank}(T) + \dim(W) - \dim(R(T) \cap W) \\ &= \text{rank}(T) + \dim(W).\end{aligned}$$

Equating both equations we find that

$$\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T) + \dim(W)$$

which implies that

$$\text{nullity}(T) = \dim(W).$$

By theorem 1.11, we get that  $N(T) = W$ . ■

- (c) Show by example that the conclusion of (b) is not necessarily true if  $V$  is not finite-dimensional.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 2.1.32

Suppose that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant. Prove that  $N(T_W) = N(T) \cap W$  and  $R(T_W) = T(W)$ .

**Proof.** First, we show that  $N(T_W) = N(T) \cap W$ . Let  $x \in N(T_W)$ . Then  $x \in W$  implies that  $T_W(x) = 0_W$  by definition of  $N(T_W)$ . Since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we get that  $T_W(x) = T(x)$ . Since  $T(W) \subseteq W$ , this tells us that  $x \in W$ . But note that  $T(x) = 0_W$ . Hence, we must also have  $x \in N(T)$ . So,  $x \in N(T)$  and  $x \in W$  implies that  $x \in N(T) \cap W$  and thus  $N(T_W) \subseteq N(T) \cap W$ . Now, let  $x \in N(T) \cap W$ . Then  $x \in N(T)$  and  $x \in W$ . Since  $x \in N(T)$ , we must have  $T(x) = 0_W$ . Since  $x \in W$  and  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we must also have  $T(x) = T_W(x) = 0_W$ . Thus,  $x \in N(T_W)$  and we get that  $N(T) \cap W \subseteq N(T_W)$ . We conclude that

$$N(T_W) = N(T) \cap W.$$

Now, let us show that  $R(T_W) = T(W)$ . Let  $w \in R(T_W)$ . Then there exists  $x \in W$  such that  $T_W(x) = w$ . Since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we have  $T_W(x) = T(x)$  and thus  $w \in T(W)$ . Thus,  $R(T_W) \subseteq T(W)$ . Conversely, let  $w \in T(W)$ . It follows immediately that  $w \in R(T)$ . Then there exists  $x \in W$  such that  $T(x) = w$ . Since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we must have  $T(x) = T_W(x)$ . Hence,  $w \in R(T_W)$  and thus  $T(W) \subseteq R(T_W)$ . Thus, we have

$$R(T_W) = T(W).$$
■

### Exercise 2.1.33

Prove Theorem 2.2 for the case that  $\beta$  is infinite, that is,  $R(T) = \text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\})$ .

**Proof.** We will show that

$$R(T) = \text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\});$$

that is, we will show that both  $R(T) \subseteq \text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\})$  and  $\text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\}) \subseteq R(T)$ . Since  $T(v) \in R(T)$  for every  $v \in \beta$ , we have that  $R(T)$  must also contain the span of  $\{T(v) : v \in \beta\}$  by Theorem 1.5. Hence, we have  $\text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\}) \subseteq R(T)$ .

On the other hand, let  $x \in R(T)$ . Then there exists some  $v \in R(T)$  such that  $T(v) = x$ .

Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ , we can write  $x \in V$  as a linear combination of vectors in  $\beta$ ; that is, we can choose scalars  $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots$  such that

$$v = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i v_i$$

where  $v_i \in \beta$  for  $i \geq 1$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} T(v) &= T\left(\sum_{i \geq 1} a_i v_i\right) \\ &= \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i T(v_i). \end{aligned}$$

But this tells us that  $w \in \text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\})$  and thus we have  $R(T) \subseteq \text{span}(\{T(v) : v \in \beta\})$ . ■

### Exercise 2.1.34

Prove the following generalization of Theorem 2.6: Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over a common field, and let  $\beta$  be a basis for  $V$ . Then for any function  $f : \beta \rightarrow W$  there exists exactly one linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that  $T(x) = f(x)$  for all  $x \in \beta$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$ . Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ , we can find  $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots \in F$  such that

$$x = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i v_i$$

for  $v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots$  in  $\beta$ . Let  $f : \beta \rightarrow W$ . Define the map  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that

$$T(x) = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i f(v_i)$$

with  $f(v_i) \in W$  for  $i \geq 1$ . We claim that  $T$  is linear. Let  $cx + y \in V$  with  $c \in F$ . Then using  $\beta$  as a basis for  $V$ , we get that

$$x = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i v_i$$

and

$$y = \sum_{i \geq 1} b_i v_i$$

for  $a_i, b_i \in F$  for  $i \geq 1$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx + y) &= \sum_{i \geq 1} (ca_i + b_i) f(v_i) \\ &= \sum_{i \geq 1} (ca_i) f(v_i) + \sum_{i \geq 1} b_i f(v_i) \\ &= c \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i f(v_i) + \sum_{i \geq 1} b_i f(v_i) \\ &= cT(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is linear. Now, we claim that  $T$  is a unique linear transformation. Suppose there exists  $U : V \rightarrow W$  defined by

$$U(x) = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i w_i$$

with  $w_i \in W$ . Note  $w_i \in W$  implies that  $f(v_i) = w_i$  for  $i \geq 1$ . Thus,

$$U(x) = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i w_i = \sum_{i \geq 1} a_i f(v_i) = T(x).$$

Since  $x \in V$  is arbitrary, we must have  $U = T$ . Hence,  $T$  is unique. ■

Exercises 35 and 36 assume the definition of *direct sum* given in the exercises of Section 1.3.

### Exercise 2.1.35

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be linear.

- (a) Suppose that  $V = R(T) + N(T)$ . Prove that  $V = R(T) \oplus N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional, the subspaces  $R(T)$  and  $N(T)$  are finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.11. Using the Dimension Theorem and the fact that  $T$  is linear, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(V) &= \text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) \\ &= \dim(R(T)) + \dim(N(T)). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $V = R(T) + N(T)$ , we can use Exercise 1.6.29 to conclude that

$$V = R(T) \oplus N(T).$$
■

- (b) Suppose that  $R(T) \cap N(T) = \{0\}$ . Prove that  $V = R(T) \oplus N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional and  $R(T)$  and  $N(T)$  are subspaces of  $V$ , we know by Theorem 1.11 that  $R(T)$  and  $N(T)$  are also finite-dimensional. Thus,  $R(T) + N(T)$  is subspace and is also finite-dimensional by part (a) of Exercise 1.6.29. Since  $R(T) \cap N(T) = \{0\}$ , we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(R(T) + N(T)) &= \dim(R(T)) + \dim(N(T)) - \dim(R(T) \cap N(T)) \\ &= \text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional and  $T$  is linear, the Dimension Theorem states that

$$\dim(V) = \text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T).$$

But this tells us that

$$\dim(R(T) + N(T)) = \dim(V).$$

This implies that  $R(T) + N(T) = V$  by Theorem 1.11. Together with  $R(T) \cap N(T) = \{0\}$ , we have that

$$V = R(T) \oplus N(T).$$
■

Be careful to say in each part where finite-dimensional is used.

### Exercise 2.1.36

Let  $V$  and  $T$  be as defined in Exercise 21.

- (a) Prove that  $V = R(T) + N(T)$ , but  $V$  is not a direct sum of these two spaces. Thus the result of Exercise 35(a) above cannot be proved without assuming that  $V$  is finite-dimensional.
- (b) Find a linear operator  $T_1$  on  $V$  such that  $R(T_1) \cap N(T_1) = \{0\}$  but  $V$  is not a direct sum of  $R(T_1)$  and  $N(T_1)$ . Conclude that  $V$  being finite-dimensional is also essential in Exercise 35(b).

**Definition 2.1.3 (Additive).** A function  $T : V \rightarrow W$  between vector spaces  $V$  and  $W$  is called **additive** if  $T(x + y) = T(x) + T(y)$  for all  $x, y \in V$ .

### Exercise 2.1.37

Prove that if  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces over the field of rational numbers, then any additive function from  $V$  into  $W$  is a linear transformation.

**Proof.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be an additive function from  $V$  into  $W$  where  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces over  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Let  $c \in \mathbb{Q}$  and let  $x, y \in V$ . Then we can find  $u = T(cx)$  and  $v = T(x)$  such that

$$c = \frac{u}{v} = \frac{T(cx)}{T(x)} \Leftrightarrow cT(x) = T(cx)$$

with  $v \neq 0$ . Using the additivity of  $T$ , we can write

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx + y) &= T(cx) + T(y) \\ &= cT(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is linear. ■

### Exercise 2.1.38

Let  $T : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the function defined by  $T(z) = \bar{z}$ . Prove that  $T$  is additive but not linear.

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $x = \delta_1 + \delta_2 i$  and  $y = \varepsilon_1 + \varepsilon_2 i$  for  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ . By definition of  $T$ , we know that

$$T(x) = \bar{x} = \delta_1 - \delta_2 i$$

and

$$T(y) = \bar{y} = \varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2 i.$$

Note that

$$x + y = (\delta_1 + \varepsilon_1) + (\delta_2 + \varepsilon_2)i.$$

By definition of  $T$ , we have that

$$\begin{aligned} T(x + y) &= (\delta_1 + \varepsilon_1) - (\delta_2 + \varepsilon_2)i \\ &= (\delta_1 - \delta_2 i) + (\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2 i) \\ &= T(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is an additive function.

Let  $z \in \mathbb{C}$  where  $z = a + bi$ . Observe that  $\bar{z} = a - bi$ . Then

$$f(z\bar{z}) = f(a^2 + b^2) = a^2 + b^2$$

but

$$zf(\bar{z}) = (a + bi)^2 = a^2 + 2abi - b^2.$$

Hence,  $f(z\bar{z}) \neq zf(\bar{z})$  implies that  $f$  is not linear. ■

### Exercise 2.1.40

Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $W$  be a subspace of  $V$ . Define the mapping  $\eta : V \rightarrow V/W$  by  $\eta(v) = v + W$  for  $v \in V$ .

- (a) Prove that  $\eta$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  onto  $V/W$  and that  $N(\eta) = W$ .

**Proof.** Let us first show that  $\eta : V \rightarrow V/W$  is a linear transformation. Let  $cx + y \in V$ . By the operations defined on  $\eta$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned} \eta(cx + y) &= (cx + y) + W \\ &= (cx + W) + (y + W) \\ &= c(x + W) + (y + W) \\ &= c\eta(x) + \eta(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\eta$  is a linear transformation.

Now, let us show that  $\eta$  is onto. Observe that  $R(\eta) \subseteq V/W$ . Let  $x \in V/W$ . Then  $x = v + W$  for  $v \in V$ . By definition of  $\eta : V \rightarrow V/W$ , we have  $\eta(v) = v + W$ . This means that  $\eta(v) = x$  which tells us that  $x \in R(\eta)$ . Hence, we conclude that  $R(\eta) = V/W$  and hence  $\eta$  is onto.

Lastly, we will prove that  $N(\eta) = W$ . Let  $x \in N(\eta)$ . Then  $\eta(x) = W$ . By definition of  $\eta$ , we must have that  $\eta(x) = x + W$ . Hence,  $x + W = W$ . By Exercise 1.3.31, we get that  $x \in W$ . Thus,  $N(\eta) \subseteq W$ . On the other hand,  $x \in W$  implies that  $W = x + W$ . By definition of  $\eta$ , we get that  $\eta(x) = W$ . Since  $W$  is the zero vector defined on  $V/W$ , we must have  $x \in N(\eta)$  and hence  $W \subseteq N(\eta)$ . Thus,  $N(\eta) = W$ . ■

- (b) Suppose that  $V$  is finite-dimensional. Use (a) and the dimension theorem to derive a formula relating  $\dim(V)$ ,  $\dim(W)$ , and  $\dim(V/W)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional, we can write

$$\dim(V) = \text{rank}(\eta) + \text{nullity}(\eta). \tag{1}$$

Since  $\eta$  is an onto function by part (a), we have  $R(\eta) = V/W$  implies  $\text{rank}(\eta) = \dim(V/W)$  by Theorem 1.11. Furthermore,  $N(\eta) = W$  implies that  $\text{nullity}(\eta) = \dim(W)$ . Hence, (1) can be re-written in the following way:

$$\dim(V) = \dim(V/W) + \dim(W).$$

Thus, we have our desired result

$$\dim(V/W) = \dim(V) - \dim(W).$$
■

---

## 2.2 The Matrix Representation of a Linear Transformation

### Exercise 2.2.1

Label the following statements as true or false. Assume that  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$ , respectively, and  $T, U : V \rightarrow W$  are linear transformations.

- (a) For any scalar  $a$ ,  $aT + U$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  to  $W$ .

**Solution.** True by Theorem 2.7. ■

- (b)  $[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = [U]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  implies  $T = U$ .

**Solution.** True by corollary to Theorem 2.6. ■

- (c) If  $m = \dim(V)$  and  $n = \dim(W)$ , then  $[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix.

**Solution.** True. ■

- (d)  $[T + U]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} + [U]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$ .

**Solution.** True by Theorem 2.8. ■

- (e)  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$  is a vector space.

**Solution.** True. ■

- (f)  $\mathcal{L}(V, W) = \mathcal{L}(W, V)$ .

**Solution.** Unless  $V = W$ , this statement is false. ■

### Exercise 2.2.6

Complete the proof of part (b) of Theorem 2.7.

**Proof.** See proof in notes. ■

### Exercise 2.2.7

Prove part (b) of Theorem 2.8.

**Proof.** See proof in notes. ■

### Exercise 2.2.8

Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space with an ordered basis  $\beta$ . Define  $T : V \rightarrow F^n$  by  $T(x) = [x]_{\beta}$ . Prove that  $T$  is linear.

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Since  $\beta$  is an ordered basis for  $V$ , we have distinct vectors  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in$

$\beta$  where

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i$$

and

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i$$

for scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  and  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n$ , respectively. Let  $c \in F$ . Then we have  $cx + y \in V$  implies

$$cx + y = \sum_{i=1}^n (ca_i + b_i) v_i.$$

By definition  $T$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx + y) &= [cx + y]_\beta \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} ca_1 + b_1 \\ ca_2 + b_2 \\ \vdots \\ ca_n + b_n \end{pmatrix} \\ &= c \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} \\ &= c[x]_\beta + [y]_\beta \\ &= cT(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T$  is a linear map. ■

### Exercise 2.2.9

Let  $V$  be the vector space of complex numbers over the field  $\mathbb{R}$ . Define  $T : V \rightarrow V$  by  $T(z) = \bar{z}$ , where  $\bar{z}$  is the complex conjugate of  $z$ . Prove that  $T$  is linear, and compute  $[T]_\beta$ , where  $\{1, i\}$ . (Compare this to Exercise 2.1.38)

**Proof.** Let  $cx + y \in \mathbb{C}$  where  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $x, y \in \mathbb{C}$ . Observe that

$$x = a + bi \text{ and } y = v + wi$$

for  $a, b, v, w \in \mathbb{R}$ . So,

$$cx + y = (ca + v) + (cb + w)i$$

Furthermore, By definition of  $T$  and definition of conjugate, we write

$$\begin{aligned} T(cx + y) &= \overline{cx + y} \\ &= (ca + v) - (cb + w)i \\ &= c(a - bi) + (v - wi) \\ &= c\bar{x} + \bar{y} \\ &= cT(x) + T(y). \end{aligned}$$



Hence,  $T$  is linear. Now, let's compute  $[T]_\beta$  with  $\beta = \{1, i\}$  as our ordered basis for  $\mathbb{C}$ . So,

$$T(1) = 1 = 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot i \text{ and } T(i) = -i = 0 \cdot 1 - 1 \cdot i.$$

Hence,

$$[T]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

■

### Exercise 2.2.10

Let  $V$  be a vector space with the ordered basis  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$ . Define  $v_0 = 0$ . By Theorem 2.6, there exists a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow V$  such that  $T(v_j) = v_j + v_{j-1}$  for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Compute  $[T]_\beta$ .

**Solution.** For  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we see that

$$T(v_1) = v_1 + v_0 = v_1$$

$$T(v_2) = v_2 + v_1$$

$$T(v_3) = v_3 + v_2$$

$$\vdots$$

$$T(v_n) = v_n + v_{n-1}.$$

Then we have

$$[T]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \ddots & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

■

### Exercise 2.2.11

Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space, and let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear transformation. Suppose that  $W$  is a  $T$ -invariant subspace of  $V$  having dimension  $k$ . Show that there is a basis  $\beta$  for  $V$  such that  $[T]_\beta$  has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ O & C \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $A$  is a  $k \times k$  matrix and  $O$  is the  $(n - k) \times k$  zero matrix.

**Proof.** Let  $\dim(V) = n$ . Since  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , let  $\alpha = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k\}$  be an ordered basis for  $W$ . By corollary to Theorem 1.11, we extend  $\alpha$  to a basis for  $V$  by adding distinct and linear independent vectors  $w_{k+1}, w_{k+2}, \dots, w_n$ . Denote this basis for  $V$  as  $\beta$  with

$$\beta = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}.$$

Hence, for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  we have

$$T(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, we know that  $T(w_j)$  for every  $w_j \in W$  with  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Hence,  $T(w_j)$  for  $1 \leq j \leq k$  can be written as a linear combination of vectors in  $\alpha$ ; that is,

$$T(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^k a_{ij}w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq k.$$

Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ , we know that for  $k+1 \leq i \leq n$ , we know that

$$T(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^k a_{ij}w_i + \sum_{i=k+1}^n a_{ij}w_i = \sum_{i=1}^k a_{ij}w_i + 0.$$

where  $a_{ij} = 0$  for  $k+1 \leq i \leq n$ . Notice that the second term above, represents the  $O$  matrix that  $(n-k) \times k$ . On the other hand, for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and  $1 \leq j \leq k$  we can see that  $T : W \rightarrow W$  (since  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant) can be represented as the matrix  $A$  that is  $k \times k$ . Then for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , we get that

$$[T(w_j)]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} A \\ O \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now, if we let  $k+1 \leq j \leq n$ , then we would see that  $T(w_j)$  can be written as

$$T(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}w_i.$$

Together with  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $k+1 \leq j \leq n$  where

$$[T(w_j)]_\beta = (T(w_{k+1}) \quad T(w_{k+2}) \quad \cdots \quad T(w_n))$$

which can be denoted with  $B$  as a  $k \times (n-k)$  matrix and  $C$  as a  $(n-k) \times (n-k)$  matrix where

$$[T(w_j)]_\beta = \begin{pmatrix} B \\ C \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence,  $[T]_\beta$  has the following matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ O & C \end{pmatrix}.$$

■

### Exercise 2.2.12

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space and  $T$  be the projection on  $W$  along  $W'$ , where  $W$  and  $W'$  are subspaces of  $V$ . Find an ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $V$  such that  $[T]_\beta$  is a diagonal matrix.

**Solution.** Let  $\dim(V) = n$  since  $V$  is a finite-dimensional vector space. Since  $W \subseteq V$  is a subspace, we know that  $W$  must be finite-dimensional as well. Let  $\dim(W) = k$  and let

$\lambda = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k\}$  be a basis for  $W$ . By corollary to Theorem 1.11, we can extend  $\lambda$  to be a basis for  $V$  by adding  $w_{k+1}, w_{k+2}, \dots, w_n \in W$  into  $\lambda$ . Denote this ordered basis for  $V$  as  $\beta$  where

$$\beta = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}.$$

Since  $W$  is a  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is a projection on  $W$  along  $W'$  ( $W'$  is also a subspace), then

$$w_j = T(w_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n$$

for every  $w_j \in W$ . This tells us that each  $w_j$  can be expressed a linear combination if and only if  $a_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and  $a_{ij} = 0$  otherwise. Hence,  $[T]_\beta$  is a diagonal matrix. ■

### Exercise 2.2.13

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces, and let  $T$  and  $U$  be nonzero linear transformations from  $V$  to  $W$ . If  $R(T) \cap R(U) = \{0\}$ , prove that  $\{T, U\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $T$  and  $U$  be nonzero linear transformations from  $V$  to  $W$ . For  $a, b \in F$ , we need to show that

$$aT + bU = T_0$$

with  $a$  and  $b$  both zero. Note that  $T_0$  is the zero linear transformation. Let  $x \in V$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (aT + bU)(x) &= T_0(x) \\ (aT)(x) + (bU)(x) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$(aT)(x) = -(bU)(x).$$

Since  $(aT)(x) \in R(T) \cap R(U)$  where  $R(T) \cap R(U) = \{0\}$  by assumption, we get that

$$(aT)(x) = 0 \Leftrightarrow aT(x) = 0.$$

Since  $T(x) \neq 0$ , we must have that  $a = 0$  when dividing  $T(x)$  on both sides on the equation above. This also implies that  $b = 0$  since  $U(x) \neq 0$  and so  $\{T, U\}$  must be linearly independent. ■

### Exercise 2.2.14

Let  $V = P(\mathbb{R})$ , and for  $j \geq 1$  define  $T_j(f(x)) = f^{(j)}(x)$ , where  $f^{(j)}(x)$  is the  $j$ th derivative of  $f(x)$ . Prove that the set  $\{T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $\mathcal{L}(V)$  for any positive integer  $n$ .

**Proof.** Let  $j \geq 1$ . We want to show that for scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have

$$a_1 T_1 + a_2 T_2 + \dots + a_n T_n = T_0.$$

Let  $f(x) \in P(\mathbb{R})$  be arbitrary. Since each  $T_j$  is linear, we have that

$$a_1 T_1(f(x)) + a_2 T_2(f(x)) + \dots + a_n T_n(f(x)) = 0$$

which can be re-written to be

$$a_1 f^{(1)}(x) + a_2 f^{(2)}(x) + \cdots + a_n f^{(n)}(x) = 0 \quad (1)$$

with each  $f^{(j)}(x)$  being the  $j$ th derivative of  $f(x)$ . Since no two polynomials in the set  $\{f^{(1)}(x), f^{(2)}(x), \dots, f^{(n)}(x)\}$  have the same degree, we know that the representation in (1) contains the trivial solution; that is,  $a_n = 0$  for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Hence, the set

$$\{T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n\}$$

must be linearly independent by Exercise 1.5.18. ■

### Exercise 2.2.15

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces, and let  $S$  be a subset of  $V$ . Define  $S^0 = \{T \in \mathcal{L}(V, W) : T(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in S\}$ . Prove the following statements.

(a)  $S^0$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ .

**Proof.** (i) Note that  $T_0 \in S^0$  since  $T_0(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ .

(ii) Let  $T, U \in S^0$ . Then  $T(x) = 0$  and  $U(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ . Then

$$(T + U)(x) = T(x) + U(x) = 0 + 0 = 0.$$

So  $T + U \in S^0$ .

(iii) Let  $c \in F$  and  $T \in S^0$ . Then  $T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ . Thus,

$$(cT)(x) = cT(x) = c \cdot 0 = 0.$$

So,  $cT \in S^0$ .

Hence,  $S^0$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ . ■

(b) If  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are subsets of  $V$  and  $S_1 \subseteq S_2$ , then  $S_2^0 \subseteq S_1^0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x_1 \in S_1$ . Since  $S_1 \subseteq S_2$ , we have that  $x_1 \in S_2$ . If  $T \in S_2^0$ , then  $T(x_1) = 0$  for  $x_1 \in S_2$ . Since  $x_1 \in S_1$ , we must also have  $T \in S_1^0$ . Hence,  $S_2^0 \subseteq S_1^0$ . ■

(c) If  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  are subspaces of  $V$ , then  $(V_1 + V_2)^0 = V_1^0 \cap V_2^0$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V_1 + V_2$  and  $V_1 \cap V_2$  are subsets of  $V$  and that  $V_1 \cap V_2 \subseteq V_1 + V_2$ , we know that  $(V_1 + V_2)^0 \subseteq V_1^0 \cap V_2^0$ .

Now, let  $T \in V_1^0 \cap V_2^0$ . Then  $T \in V_1^0$  and  $T \in V_2^0$  implies  $T(x_1) = 0$  and  $T(x_2) = 0$  for all  $x_1 \in V_1$  and  $x_2 \in V_2$ . Since  $T$  is linear, we must have

$$0 = 0 + 0 = T(x_1) + T(x_2) = T(x_1 + x_2).$$

Hence,  $T \in (V_1 + V_2)^0$  and so  $V_1^0 \cap V_2^0 \subseteq (V_1 + V_2)^0$ . Thus,

$$(V_1 + V_2)^0 = V_1^0 \cap V_2^0. \quad \blacksquare$$

### Exercise 2.2.16

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces such that  $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$ , and let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be linear. Show that there exists ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively, such that  $[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  is a diagonal matrix.

**Proof.** Using the same process found in the dimension theorem, let  $\lambda = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be a basis for  $N(T)$ . We can extend  $\lambda$  into a basis for  $V$  by adding distinct linearly independent vectors  $v_{k+1}, v_{k+2}, \dots, v_n$  into  $\lambda$ . Denote this new basis as  $\beta$  where

$$\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}.$$

Since  $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$ , we get that

$$\dim(W) = \dim(N(T)) + \dim(R(T)). \quad (1)$$

Note that  $\{T(v_{k+1}), T(v_{k+2}), \dots, T(v_n)\}$  is a basis for  $R(T)$  which can be extended to be a basis for  $W$ . Hence, we have  $\gamma$  defined by

$$\gamma = \{T(v_1), T(v_2), \dots, T(v_n)\}$$

with  $T(v_i) = w_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  to a basis for  $W$ . Now, note that for  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we have

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}w_i = \sum_{i=1}^k a_{ij}w_i + \sum_{i=k+1}^n a_{ij}w_i.$$

By definition of  $N(T)$ , we know that for  $1 \leq j \leq k$  and  $1 \leq i \leq k$  that

$$0 = \sum_{i=1}^k a_{ij}w_i.$$

For  $k+1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $k+1 \leq j \leq n$ ,

$$w_j = T(v_j) = \sum_{i=k+1}^n a_{ij}w_i$$

so we have  $a_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and  $a_{ij} = 0$  otherwise. So, the matrix representation of  $T$  can be written as

$$[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = \begin{pmatrix} O & O \\ O & I \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $I$  is the  $(n-k) \times (n-k)$  matrix. Thus, we can see that  $[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  is a diagonal matrix. ■

## 2.3 Composition of Linear Transformations and Matrix Multiplication

### Exercise 2.3.5

Complete the proof of Theorem 2.12 and its corollary.

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix,  $B$  and  $C$  be  $n \times p$  matrices, and  $D$  and  $E$  be  $q \times m$  matrices. Then

(a) Let  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq p$ . By definition of the product of two matrices, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (A(B + C))_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}(B + C)_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}(B_{kj} + C_{kj}) \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{kj} + \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}C_{kj} \\
 &= (AB)_{ij} + (AC)_{ij}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ .

Now, let  $1 \leq i \leq q$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . For the second formula, we can use the same definition to write

$$\begin{aligned}
 ((D + E)A)_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^m (D + E)_{ik}A_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^m (D_{ik} + E_{ik})A_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^m D_{ik}A_{kj} + \sum_{k=1}^m E_{ik}A_{kj} \\
 &= (DA)_{ij} + (EA)_{ij}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $(D + E)A = DA + EA$ .

(b) Let  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq p$ . Let  $a \in F$ . Then using the definition of the product once again, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 a(AB)_{ij} &= a \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n a(A_{ik}B_{kj}) \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n (aA_{ik})B_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n (aA)_{ik}B_{kj} \\
 &= ((aA)B)_{ij}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 ((aA)B)_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^n (aA_{ik})B_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n (A_{ik}a)B_{kj} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}(aB_{kj}) \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}(aB)_{kj} \\
 &= (A(aB))_{ij}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $(aA)B = A(aB)$ . Thus, we conclude that

$$a(AB) = (aA)B = A(aB).$$

- (c) Let  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Since  $\delta_{ik} = 1$  only when  $i = k$  and 0 otherwise, we must have

$$(I_m A)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^m \delta_{ik} A_{kj} = A_{ij}.$$

Likewise,

$$(A I_n)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik} \delta_{kj} = A_{ij}$$

by the same reasoning. Hence, we have

$$I_m A = A = A I_n.$$

- (d) Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space with  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  as an ordered basis. Since  $I_V(v_j) = v_j$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we must have

$$v_j = I_V(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij} v_i$$

which holds only if  $a_{ij} = 1$  for all  $i = j$  and 0 otherwise. But this means that  $a_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$ , so  $[I_V]_{\beta} = I_n$ . ■

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k$  be  $n \times p$  matrices. Let  $1 \leq \ell \leq m$

and  $1 \leq s \leq p$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[ A \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i B_i \right) \right]_{\ell s} &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{\ell \lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i B_i \right)_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{\ell \lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^k (a_i B_i)_{\lambda s} \right) \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{\ell \lambda} \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i (B_i)_{\lambda s} \right) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i \left( \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{\ell \lambda} (B_i)_{\lambda s} \right) && \text{(part (a) of Theorem 2.12)} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i (AB_i)_{\ell s}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$A \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i B_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i AB_i.$$

To show the second formula, let  $1 \leq \ell \leq q$  and  $1 \leq s \leq n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[ \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i C_i \right) A \right]_{\ell s} &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i C_i \right)_{\ell \lambda} A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^k (a_i C_i)_{\ell \lambda} \right) A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i (C_i)_{\ell \lambda} \right) A_{\lambda s} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i \left( \sum_{\lambda=1}^n (C_i)_{\ell \lambda} A_{\lambda s} \right) && \text{(part (a) of Theorem 2.12)} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i (C_i A)_{\ell s}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$\left( \sum_{i=1}^k a_i C_i \right) A = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i C_i A.$$

■

### Exercise 2.3.6

Prove (b) of Theorem 2.13.



**Proof.** To show the other equation, we apply part (c) of Theorem 2.12, to write

$$v_j = \begin{pmatrix} B_{1j} \\ B_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ B_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (BI_p)_{1j} \\ (BI_p)_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ (BI_p)_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^n B_{1k}\delta_{kj} \\ \sum_{k=1}^n B_{2k}\delta_{kj} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^n B_{nk}\delta_{kj} \end{pmatrix} = B \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{1j} \\ \delta_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ \delta_{pj} \end{pmatrix} = Be_j$$

where  $\delta_{1j}$  are the Kronecker delta constants. ■

### Exercise 2.3.7

Prove (c) and (f) of Theorem 2.15.

**Proof.** (c) Using the sum rule for matrices, we must have

$$L_{A+B}(x) = (A+B)(x) = A(x) + B(x) = L_A(x) + L_B(x).$$

Hence,  $L_{A+B} = L_A + L_B$ . Now, let  $a \in F$ . Using the same reasoning, we have

$$L_{aA}(x) = (aA)(x) = a(A(x)) = aL_A(x).$$

Hence,  $L_{aA} = aL_A$ .

(f) Let  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} L_{I_n}(e_j) &= I_n(e_j) = e_j \\ &= I_{F^n}(e_j). \end{aligned} \quad \text{(Part (d) of Theorem 2.3.4)}$$

Hence,  $L_{I_n} = I_{F^n}$ . ■

### Exercise 2.3.8

Prove Theorem 2.10. Now state and prove a more general result involving linear transformations with domains unequal to their codomains.

**Proposition 2.3.1.** Let  $V, W, Y$ , and  $Z$  be vector spaces. Then we have the following properties:

(a) Let  $U, U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$  and  $T, T_1, T_2 \in \mathcal{L}(W, Z)$ . Then we have

$$T(U_1 + U_2) = TU_1 + TU_2 \text{ and } (T_1 + T_2)U = T_1U + T_2U.$$

(b) Let  $U \in \mathcal{L}(Y, Z), T_1 \in \mathcal{L}(W, Y), T_2 \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$ . Then we have

$$U(T_1T_2) = (UT_1)T_2.$$

(c) Let  $I \in \mathcal{L}(V, V)$  and  $I \in \mathcal{L}(W, W)$ . Then  $T \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$  implies that

$$TI = IT = T.$$

(d) Let  $a \in F$  and let  $U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$ . Then

$$a(U_1 U_2) = (aU_1)U_2 = U_1(aU_2).$$

**Proof.** The proof is similar in the notes. ■

### Exercise 2.3.10

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Prove that  $A$  is a diagonal matrix if and only if  $A_{ij} = \delta_{ij} A_{ij}$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, suppose  $A$  is a diagonal matrix. Let  $1 \leq j \leq n$  and  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Since  $A$  is a diagonal matrix, we know that  $A_{ij} = 0$  whenever  $i \neq j$ . Furthermore, we have that  $\delta_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and 0 otherwise. Hence, we have  $A = IA$  by Theorem 2.12 which implies

$$A_{ij} = (I_n A)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n \delta_{ik} A_{kj} = \delta_{ij} A_{ij}$$

for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  and  $1 \leq i \leq n$ .

For the backwards direction, assume  $A_{ij} = \delta_{ij} A_{ij}$ . Since  $\delta_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and 0 whenever  $i \neq j$ , we get that  $A_{ij} = A_{ij}$  and  $A_{ij} = 0$  respectively. Hence,  $A$  is a diagonal matrix. ■

### Exercise 2.3.11

Let  $V$  be a vector space, and let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be linear. Prove that  $T^2 = T_0$  if and only if  $R(T) \subseteq N(T)$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, let  $T^2 = T_0$ . Let  $y \in R(T)$ . Then for some  $x \in V$ , we have  $y = T(x)$ . Then we have

$$T(y) = T(T(x)) = T^2(x) = T_0(x) = 0.$$

Hence,  $y \in N(T)$ .

For the backwards direction, let  $x \in V$ . Then we have

$$T^2(x) = T(T(x)).$$

Note that  $T(x) \in R(T)$  and  $R(T) \subseteq N(T)$  implies that  $T^2(x) = 0$ . But this also means that  $T_0(x) = 0$ . Hence, we have  $T^2(x) = T_0(x)$ . ■

### Exercise 2.3.12

Let  $V, W$ , and  $Z$  be vector spaces, and let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  and  $U : W \rightarrow Z$  be linear.

(a) Prove that if  $UT$  is injective, then  $T$  is injective. Must  $U$  also be injective?

**Proof.** Suppose for sake of contradiction that  $T$  is not injective. Then there exists  $x, y \in V$  such that  $x \neq y$  implies  $T(x) = T(y)$ . But  $UT$  being injective must imply that for any  $x, y \in V$ , we have  $UT(x) = UT(y)$  implies  $x = y$  which is a contradiction. Hence,  $T$  must be injective. Note that  $U$  need not be injective in this case. ■

(b) Prove that if  $UT$  is surjective, then  $U$  is surjective. Must  $T$  also be surjective?

**Proof.** Suppose that  $UT$  is surjective. Let  $y \in R(UT)$ . By default, we know that  $R(U) \subseteq Z$ . Then for some  $x \in V$ , we have

$$y = UT(x) = U(T(x)).$$

Hence,  $y \in R(U)$  as well which implies that  $Z \subseteq R(U)$ . Thus,  $U$  must be surjective. Notice that  $T$  need not be surjective for the equation above to be true. ■

(c) Prove that if  $U$  and  $T$  are injective and surjective, then  $UT$  is also.

**Proof.** First, we show that  $UT$  is injective. Let  $x, y \in V$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} UT(x) &= UT(y) \\ U(T(x)) &= U(T(y)). \end{aligned}$$

But  $U$  being injective, implies that  $T(x) = T(y)$ . Since  $T$  is also injective, we must have  $x = y$ . Hence,  $UT$  is injective.

Now, we show that  $UT$  is surjective. Let  $z \in R(U)$ . Since  $U$  is surjective, we have that for some  $y \in W$ ,

$$z = U(y).$$

Since  $T$  is also surjective, we have that  $y \in W$  implies that  $T(x) = y$  for some  $x \in V$ . Hence, we have

$$z = U(y) = U(T(x)) = UT(x)$$

and so we have  $UT$  surjective. ■

### Exercise 2.3.13

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices. Recall that the trace of  $A$  is defined by

$$\text{tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii}.$$

Prove that  $\text{tr}(AB) = \text{tr}(BA)$  and  $\text{tr}(A) = \text{tr}(A^t)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(AB) &= \sum_{i=1}^n (AB)_{ii} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik} B_{ki} \right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ki} A_{ik} \right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (BA)_{kk} \\ &= \text{tr}(BA). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\text{tr}(AB) = \text{tr}(BA)$ .

For the second formula, observe that

$$\operatorname{tr}(A^t) = \sum_{i=1}^n (A^t)_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii} = \operatorname{tr}(A).$$

■

### Exercise 2.3.14

Assume the notation in Theorem 2.13.

- (a) Suppose that  $z$  is a (column) vector in  $F^p$ . Use Theorem 2.13(b) to prove that  $Bz$  is a linear combination of the columns of  $B$ . In particular, if  $z = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_p)^t$ , then show that

$$Bz = \sum_{j=1}^p a_j v_j.$$

**Proof.** Note that  $B$  is an  $n \times p$  matrix and that

$$z = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_p)^t = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_p \end{pmatrix}.$$

Observe that  $z$  can be re-written in the following way:

$$z = a_1 e_1 + a_2 e_2 + \dots + a_p e_p = \sum_{j=1}^p a_j e_j.$$

Using theorem 2.13, we find that

$$Bz = B\left(\sum_{j=1}^p a_j e_j\right) = \sum_{j=1}^p a_j (Be_j) = \sum_{j=1}^p a_j v_j.$$

Hence, we have

$$Bz = \sum_{j=1}^p a_j v_j.$$

■

- (b) Extend (a) to prove that column  $j$  of  $AB$  is a linear combination of the columns of  $A$  with coefficients in the linear combination being entries of column  $j$  of  $B$ .

**Proof.** Denote the column vectors of  $A$  as  $x_i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and note that  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix. Observe that the  $j$ th column of  $B$  can be written as

$$v_j = \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij} e_i$$

for  $1 \leq j \leq p$ . Using Theorem 2.13 again, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} u_j &= Av_j = A\left(\sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij}e_i\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij}(Ae_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij}x_i \end{aligned}$$

where  $x_i$  is a column vector in  $F^m$  with entries in  $A$ . Hence, we have

$$u_j = \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij}x_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq p.$$

■

- (c) For any row vector  $w \in F^m$ , prove that  $wA$  is a linear combination of the rows of  $A$  with the coefficients in the linear combination being the coordinates of  $w$ .

**Proof.** Let  $w \in F^m$  be a row vector with entries  $b_j$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . Denote  $x_i$  as the  $i$ th row of  $A$  which is an  $m \times n$  matrix. Using the properties of transpose, we write

$$\begin{aligned} wA &= (A^t w^t)^t = \left(\sum_{i=1}^m b_i x_i^t\right)^t \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m (b_i x_i^t)^t \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m b_i x_i. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$wA = \sum_{i=1}^m b_i x_i.$$

■

- (d) Prove the analogous result to (b) about rows: Row  $i$  of  $AB$  is a linear combination of the rows of  $B$  with the coefficients in the linear combination being the entries of row  $i$  of  $A$ .

**Proof.** Let  $u_i$  denote the  $i$ th row of the matrix  $AB$ . Note that  $AB$  is an  $m \times p$  matrix. By taking a similar approach to proving part (a) of Theorem 2.13, we have

$$u_i = \begin{pmatrix} (AB)_{i1} \\ (AB)_{i2} \\ \vdots \\ (AB)_{ip} \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{k1} \\ \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{k2} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{kp} \end{pmatrix}^t = \begin{pmatrix} A_{i1} \\ A_{i2} \\ \vdots \\ A_{in} \end{pmatrix}^t B = x_i B$$

where  $x_i$  is the  $i$ th row of  $A$ . Apply part (c), we have

$$u_i = x_i B = \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} v_j \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq m$$

where  $v_j$  is the  $j$ th row of  $B$  that has dimensions  $1 \times p$ . ■

### Exercise 2.3.15

Let  $M$  and  $A$  be matrices for which the product matrix  $MA$  is defined. If the  $j$ th column of  $A$  is a linear combination of a set of columns of  $A$ , prove that the  $j$ th column of  $MA$  is a linear combination of the corresponding columns of  $M$  with the same corresponding coefficients.

**Proof.** Let  $M$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix. Let  $x_j$  be the  $j$ th column of  $A$  where  $A$  is an  $n \times p$  matrix. Let  $u_j$  be the  $j$ th column of  $MA$  where  $MA$  is an  $m \times p$  matrix. Define this  $j$ th column vector as

$$u_j = Mx_j$$

by Theorem 2.13. Note that

$$x_j = \begin{pmatrix} A_{1j} \\ A_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ A_{nj} \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij} e_i$$

where  $e_i$  is the standard basis vector for  $F^n$ . We can see by Corollary to Theorem 2.12 that

$$u_j = Mx_j = M \left( \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij} e_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij} (Me_i).$$

Note that  $e_i$  is an  $n \times 1$  matrix and  $M$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix. This means that  $Me_i$  is in  $F^m$ . Denote this column vector as  $v_i = Me_i$  where  $i$  is the  $i$ th column of  $M$ . Hence, we have

$$u_j = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij} v_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq p.$$
■

### Exercise 2.3.16

Let  $V$  be finite-dimensional vector space, and let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be linear.

- (a) If  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T^2)$ , prove that  $R(T) \cap N(T) = \{0\}$ . Deduce that  $V = R(T) \oplus N(T)$  (see the exercises of Section 1.3).

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional, we know that

$$\dim(V) = \text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) \tag{1}$$

by the dimension theorem. By the same reasoning, we also get that

$$\dim(V) = \text{nullity}(T^2) + \text{rank}(T^2). \tag{2}$$

Equating (1) and (2) together, we get that

$$\text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T) = \text{nullity}(T^2) + \text{rank}(T^2).$$

Since  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T^2)$ , we find that  $\text{nullity}(T) = \text{nullity}(T^2)$ . Let  $x \in N(T)$  be arbitrary. Then we have that  $T(x) = 0$  with  $x \in N(T)$  implying  $x = 0$ . But since  $x \in N(T^2)$  as well, we have that

$$T^2(x) = 0.$$

Note that

$$T^2(x) = 0 \Leftrightarrow T(T(x)) = 0$$

with  $T(x) \in N(T)$  implying  $T(x) = 0$  since  $T$  is injective. Note that

$$T(x) = x = 0$$

where  $T(x) \in R(T)$  and  $x \in N(T)$ . Hence,  $R(T) \cap N(T) = \{0\}$ .

By the dimension theorem and Exercise 1.6.29, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(R(T) + N(T)) &= \dim(R(T)) + \dim(N(T)) - \dim(R(T) \cap N(T)) \\ &= \dim(R(T)) + \dim(N(T)) \\ &= \dim(V). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $V = R(T) + N(T)$  by Theorem 1.11. Thus, we have

$$V = R(T) \oplus N(T).$$

■

(b) Prove that  $V = R(T^k) \oplus N(T^k)$  for some positive integer  $k$ .

**Proof.** Pick a positive integer  $k$  such that  $\text{rank}(T^k) = \text{rank}(T^{k+1})$ . By dimension theorem, we can write

$$\dim(V) = \text{rank}(T^k) + \text{nullity}(T^k). \quad (1)$$

By the same reasoning, we also have

$$\dim(V) = \text{rank}(T^{k+1}) + \text{nullity}(T^{k+1}). \quad (2)$$

By setting (1) and (2) equal to each other and using the fact that  $\text{rank}(T^k) = \text{rank}(T^{k+1})$ , we have

$$\text{nullity}(T^k) = \text{nullity}(T^{k+1}).$$

Thus,  $N(T^k) = N(T^{k+1})$  by Theorem 1.11. Now, let  $x \in N(T^{k+1})$ . Then we have  $T^{k+1}(x) = 0$ . Since  $x \in N(T^k)$ , we also have  $T^k(x) = 0$ . But note that

$$T^{k+1}(x) = T^k(T(x)) = 0.$$

So, we have

$$T^k(T(x)) = T^k(x) = 0.$$

Since  $T_k$  is injective, we know that

$$T(x) = x = 0.$$

But note that  $T(x) \in R(T^k)$  and  $x \in N(T^k)$ . Hence,  $R(T^k) \cap N(T^k) = \{0\}$ . To show that  $V = R(T^k) + N(T^k)$ , we can just follow the same process shown in part (a). Hence, we have

$$V = R(T^k) \oplus N(T^k).$$

■

### Exercise 2.3.18

Using only the definition of matrix multiplication, prove that multiplication of matrices is associative.

**Proof.** Define  $A, B$  and  $C$  as  $m \times n$ ,  $n \times p$ , and  $p \times \ell$  matrices respectively. This establishes that  $(AB)C$  is an  $m \times \ell$  matrix. Using the definition of matrix multiplication, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} ((AB)C)_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^p (AB)_{ik} C_{kj} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^p \left( \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{i\lambda} B_{\lambda k} \right) C_{kj} \\ &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{i\lambda} \left( \sum_{k=1}^p B_{\lambda k} C_{kj} \right) \\ &= \sum_{\lambda=1}^n A_{i\lambda} (BC)_{\lambda j} \\ &= (A(BC))_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

where  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq \ell$ . Hence, we have  $(AB)C = A(BC)$ . ■

## 2.4 Invertibility and Isomorphisms

### Exercise 2.4.4

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  invertible matrices. Prove that  $AB$  is invertible and  $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  invertible matrices. We need to show that  $(AB)B^{-1}A^{-1} = I_n$  and  $B^{-1}A^{-1}(AB) = I_n$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} BB^{-1} = I_n &\Leftrightarrow A(BB^{-1}) = A \\ &\Leftrightarrow (AB)B^{-1} = A \\ &\Leftrightarrow (AB)B^{-1}A^{-1} = AA^{-1} \\ &\Leftrightarrow (AB)B^{-1}A^{-1} = I_n. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A^{-1}A = I_n &\Leftrightarrow B^{-1}(A^{-1}A) = B^{-1} \\ &\Leftrightarrow (B^{-1}A^{-1})A = B^{-1} \\ &\Leftrightarrow (B^{-1}A^{-1})AB = B^{-1}B \\ &\Leftrightarrow (B^{-1}A^{-1})AB = I_n. \end{aligned}$$



This tells us that  $AB$  is invertible and that

$$B^{-1}A^{-1} = (AB)^{-1}.$$

■

### Exercise 2.4.5

Let  $A$  be invertible. Prove that  $A^t$  is invertible and  $(A^t)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^t$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an invertible. Observe that  $(A^t)^t = A$ . Thus, we have

$$I_n = AA^{-1} = (A^t)^t A^{-1} = \left( (A^{-1})^t A^t \right)^t.$$

Taking the transpose on both sides gives us the following equation

$$(A^{-1})^t A^t = I_n$$

where  $(I_n)^t = I_n$ . Similarly, we have

$$I_n = A^{-1}A = A^{-1}(A^t)^t = \left( A^t(A^{-1})^t \right)^t$$

which implies

$$\left( A^t(A^{-1})^t \right)^t = I_n.$$

Taking the transpose again then gives us

$$A^t(A^{-1})^t = I_n.$$

Therefore,  $A^t$  is invertible and that

■

### Exercise 2.4.6

Prove that if  $A$  is invertible and  $AB = O$ , then  $B = O$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $A$  is an invertible matrix. Let  $AB$  be a defined matrix product where  $AB = O$ . Since  $A$  is invertible, we have  $A^{-1}A = AA^{-1} = I$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} AB = O &\Rightarrow A^{-1}(AB) = A^{-1}O \\ &\Rightarrow (A^{-1}A)B = O \\ &\Rightarrow IB = O \\ &\Rightarrow B = O. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $B = O$ .

■

### Exercise 2.4.7

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix.

- (a) Suppose that  $A^2 = O$ . Prove that  $A$  is not invertible.

**Proof.** Let  $A^2 = O$  where  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix. Suppose for sake of contradiction that  $A$  is invertible. Thus, we have  $AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = I_n$ . Now, observe that multiplying

$A^{-1}$  on the left side of  $A^2 = O$  produces the following

$$\begin{aligned} A^{-1}(A^2) &= A^{-1}O \Rightarrow A^{-1}(AA) = O \\ &\Rightarrow (A^{-1}A)A = O \\ &\Rightarrow I_n A = O \\ &\Rightarrow A = O. \end{aligned}$$

■

- (b) Suppose that  $AB = O$  for some nonzero  $n \times n$  matrix  $B$ . Could  $A$  be invertible? Explain.

**Solution.** The matrix  $A$  cannot be invertible in this case since the nonzero matrix  $B$  implies that  $A = O$  for  $AB = O$  to hold and that we know that the zero matrix  $O$  cannot be invertible. ■

### Exercise 2.4.8

Prove Corollaries 1 and 2 of Theorem 2.18.

**Proof.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be linear and let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Suppose  $T$  is invertible. Then there exists a unique linear transformation denoted by  $T^{-1} : V \rightarrow V$  such that

$$TT^{-1} = T^{-1}T = I_V.$$

By using the Corollary to Theorem 2.11 and part (d) of Theorem 2.12, we must have that

$$[T]_{\beta}[T^{-1}]_{\beta} = [TT^{-1}]_{\beta} = [I_V]_{\beta} = I_n$$

and similarly,

$$[T^{-1}]_{\beta}[T]_{\beta} = [T^{-1}T]_{\beta} = [I_V]_{\beta} = I_n.$$

This tells us that  $[T]_{\beta}$  is invertible and that

$$[T^{-1}]_{\beta} = ([T]_{\beta})^{-1}.$$

For the backwards direction, the ordered basis  $\beta$  defined earlier implies that there exists a unique linear transformation  $U : V \rightarrow V$  defined by

$$U(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij}v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

We need to show that  $U = T^{-1}$ . Using the fact that  $[T]_{\beta}$  is invertible, we can write

$$[TU]_{\beta} = [T]_{\beta}[U]_{\beta} = I_n = [I_V]_{\beta}$$

and similarly

$$[UT]_{\beta} = [U]_{\beta}[T]_{\beta} = I_n = [I_V]_{\beta}.$$

But this tells us that  $UT = TU = I_V$ . So,  $U = T^{-1}$  and that  $T$  is invertible. ■

**Proof.** Let  $L_A : F^n \rightarrow F^n$ . Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be a basis for  $F^n$ . By part (a) of Theorem 2.15, we have that  $[L_A]_{\beta} = A$ . Since  $A$  is invertible, we know that  $L_A$  must also be invertible by Corollary to Theorem 2.18. Furthermore, we have that  $L_A L_A^{-1} = I$  implies

that

$$L_{A^{-1}} = (L_A)^{-1}.$$

Conversely,  $L_A$  invertible implies that  $[L_A]_\beta$  is invertible by Corollary to Theorem 2.18. By Theorem 2.15, we must have that  $[L_A]_\beta = A$ . But this means that  $A$  is invertible. ■

### Exercise 2.4.9

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices such that  $AB$  is invertible. Prove that  $A$  and  $B$  are invertible. Given an example to show that arbitrary matrices  $A$  and  $B$  need not be invertible if  $AB$  is invertible.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 2.4.10

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices such that  $AB = I_n$ .

- (a) Use Exercise 9 to conclude that  $A$  and  $B$  are invertible.

**Solution.** Apply Exercise 9. ■

- (b) Prove  $A = B^{-1}$  (and hence  $B = A^{-1}$ ).

**Proof.** Since  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix, we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} AB = I_n &\Rightarrow A^{-1}(AB) = A^{-1}I_n \\ &\Rightarrow (A^{-1}A)B = A^{-1}I_n \\ &\Rightarrow I_n B = A^{-1}I_n \\ &\Rightarrow B = A^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Likewise,  $B$  being an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix implies that

$$\begin{aligned} AB = I_n &\Rightarrow (AB)B^{-1} = I_n B^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow A(BB^{-1}) = I_n B^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow AI_n = B^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow A = B^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

- (c) State and prove analogous results for linear transformations defined on finite-dimensional vector spaces.

**Proof.** Define  $T : V \rightarrow V$  and  $U : V \rightarrow V$  with  $V$  being an arbitrary finite-dimensional vector space. Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  such that  $[T]_\beta$  and  $[U]_\beta$  are properly defined and that  $[T]_\beta[U]_\beta = I_n$ . Then we have

$$[T]_\beta = ([U]_\beta)^{-1} \text{ and } [U]_\beta = ([T]_\beta)^{-1}.$$

To prove this, we can let  $A = [T]_\beta$  and  $B = [U]_\beta$  and use parts (a) and (b) to get our desired result. ■

### Exercise 2.4.11

Verify that the transformation in Example 5 is injective.

**Proof.** Since  $\dim(P_3(\mathbb{R})) = \dim(M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R}))$ , we must have that  $P_3(\mathbb{R})$  is isomorphic to  $M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$  by Theorem 2.19. By definition, this means that  $T$  is invertible which further implies that  $T$  is injective. ■

### Exercise 2.4.12

Prove Theorem 2.21.

**Proof.** Let  $\dim(V) = n$ . Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . We can show that  $\phi_\beta(y)$  is an isomorphism by showing that  $\phi_\beta$  is a surjective and injective linear map. Suppose  $\phi_\beta(x) = \phi_\beta(y)$ . Then by definition of  $\phi_\beta$ , we must have that  $[x]_\beta = [y]_\beta$  which further implies that  $x = y$ . Now, let  $y \in V$ . Since  $\beta$  is an ordered basis for  $V$ , we can find scalars  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n$  such that

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^n \delta_i v_i.$$

This implies that we have constructed a coordinate vector such that  $[y]_\beta = \phi_\beta(y)$ . Hence,  $\phi_\beta$  is surjective. Thus, we find that  $\phi_\beta$  is an isomorphism. ■

### Exercise 2.4.13

Let  $\sim$  mean "is isomorphic to." Prove that  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation on the class of vector spaces over  $F$ .

**Proof.** Let  $S$  be the class of vector spaces over  $F$ . Let  $V \in S$ . Notice that  $V$  is isomorphic to itself since the identity linear transformation  $I_V : V \rightarrow V$  is invertible. Thus,  $V \sim V$ .

Let  $V, W \in S$ . Suppose that  $V \sim W$ . Then there exists an invertible linear map  $T : V \rightarrow W$ . This means that  $T$  contains an inverse  $T^{-1} : W \rightarrow V$  such that  $TT^{-1} = I_W$  and  $T^{-1}T = I_V$ . Note that  $T^{-1}$  is linear and that  $T^{-1}$  is also invertible since  $T$  is its inverse. Thus,  $W \sim V$ .

Let  $V, W, Z \in S$ . Now, suppose that  $V \sim W$  and  $W \sim Z$ . This means that there exists invertible linear maps  $T : V \rightarrow W$  and  $U : W \rightarrow Z$ . Let  $L : V \rightarrow Z$  be defined by  $L = UT$ . Let  $x, y \in V$ . Suppose  $L(x) = L(y)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} L(x) &= L(y) \\ UT(x) &= UT(y) \\ U(T(x)) &= U(T(y)). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that  $U$  is an injective map which tells us that  $T(x) = T(y)$ . But  $T$  is also injective, so we must have  $x = y$ . Hence,  $L$  is an injective map.

Now, let  $z \in Z$ . Since  $U$  is surjective, we must have  $z = U(y)$  for some  $y \in W$ . But note that  $T$  is surjective implies that  $y = T(x)$  for some  $x \in V$ . But this tells us that

$$z = U(y) = U(T(x)) = UT(x) = L(x).$$

Hence,  $L$  is a surjective map and that  $L$  is an invertible map. Thus,  $V \sim Z$ . ■

### Exercise 2.4.15

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces, and let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation. Suppose that  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ . Prove that  $T$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $W$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, suppose  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is an isomorphism where  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional vector spaces. Hence,  $T$  is invertible by definition. Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Since  $T$  is also injective and that  $\beta$  is a linearly independent subset of  $V$ , we know that  $T(\beta)$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W$  by part (b) of Exercise 2.1.14. Furthermore,  $\beta$  being a basis for  $V$  implies that  $\text{span}(T(\beta)) = R(T)$  by Theorem 2.2. But notice that  $T$  is also surjective since it is an isomorphism. Hence, we must have that  $R(T) = W$  and that  $T(\beta)$  spans  $W$ . Thus, we have that  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $W$ .

For the backwards direction, assume  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $W$ . In order to show that  $T$  is an isomorphism, we must show that  $T$  is a bijective linear map. Let  $x, y \in V$ . Since  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$ , we must have

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i \text{ and } y = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i$$

for some scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  and  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n$ . Suppose  $T(x) = T(y)$ . Then observe that  $T$  being linear implies that

$$\begin{aligned} T(x) &= T(y) \\ T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right) &= T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i\right) \\ \sum_{i=1}^n a_i T(v_i) &= \sum_{i=1}^n b_i T(v_i) \end{aligned}$$

which subsequently leads to

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (a_i - b_i) T(v_i) = 0 \Leftrightarrow a_i = b_i \text{ for all } i$$

since  $T(\beta)$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W$ . Hence,  $x = y$  and that  $T$  is injective.

Now, let  $y \in W$ . Since  $T(\beta)$  is a basis for  $W$  and  $T$  linear, we know that there exists scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  such that

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i T(v_i) = T\left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i\right).$$

But this means that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i$$

for some  $x \in V$ . Hence,  $T$  is surjective and thus  $T$  is an isomorphism. ■

### Exercise 2.4.16

Let  $B$  be an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix. Define  $\Phi : M_{n \times n}(F) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(F)$  by  $\Phi(A) = B^{-1}AB$ . Prove that  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** Let  $B$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. First, we show that  $\Phi : M_{n \times n}(F) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(F)$  is linear. Let  $a \in F$  and  $D, C \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Then by using the algebraic properties of matrices, we must have

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi(aC + D) &= B^{-1}(aC + D)B \\ &= (B^{-1}(aC) + B^{-1}D)B \\ &= B^{-1}(aC)B + B^{-1}DB \\ &= a(B^{-1}CB) + B^{-1}DB \\ &= a\Phi(C) + \Phi(D)\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\Phi$  is a linear map. Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . By definition of  $\Phi$ , we know that

$$\Phi(A) = B^{-1}AB.$$

So, define the linear map  $U : M_{n \times n}(F) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(F)$  by  $U(A) = BAB^{-1}$ . Notice that  $B$  is invertible, so we can write

$$B(B^{-1}AB)B^{-1} = B^{-1}(BAB^{-1})B = IA = AI = A$$

where  $I$  is the identity linear map for  $M_{n \times n}$ . Hence, we have  $\Phi U = U \Phi = I$ . Hence,  $\Phi$  is an invertible map and thus  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism. ■

### Exercise 2.4.17

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces and  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be an isomorphism. Let  $V_0$  be a subspace of  $V$ .

- (a) Prove that  $T(V_0)$  is a subspace of  $W$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V_0$  be a subspace of  $V$ . Observe that  $T(0_V) = 0_W \in T(V_0)$  since  $0_V \in V_0$ . Let  $z, y \in T(V_0)$ . Then  $T(x) = y$  and  $T(w) = z$  for  $x, w \in V_0$  implies that

$$z + y = T(x) + T(w) = T(x + w)$$

since  $x + w \in V_0$ . Now, let  $c \in F$ . Hence,  $z + y \in T(V_0)$ . Then

$$cy = cT(x) = T(cx)$$

with  $cx \in V_0$ . Hence,  $cy \in T(V_0)$ . ■

- (b) Prove that  $\dim(V_0) = \dim(T(V_0))$ .

**Proof.** Since  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional vector spaces and that  $V_0$  and  $T(V_0)$  are subspaces of  $V$  and  $W$  respectively, we must have that  $V_0$  and  $T(V_0)$  be both finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.11. Let  $T(V_0) = W_0$ . Since  $T$  is an isomorphism, we know that  $T$  must be injective and surjective. So, the Dimension Theorem implies that

$$\dim(V_0) = \dim(N(T)) + \dim(R(T)) = \dim(W_0).$$

Hence,  $\dim(V_0) = \dim(W_0)$ . ■

### Exercise 2.4.20

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation from an  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$  to an  $m$ -dimensional vector space  $W$ . Let  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  be ordered bases for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. Prove that  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(L_A)$  and that  $\text{nullity}(T) = \text{nullity}(L_A)$ , where  $A = [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $R(T)$  is a subspace of  $W$  and  $R(L_A)$  is a subspace  $F^m$ . Since  $\phi_{\gamma} : W \rightarrow F^m$  is an isomorphism by Theorem 2.21 (that is,  $\dim(W) = \dim(F^m)$ ), we can use Exercise 17 to state that  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(L_A)$ . Similarly,  $N(T)$  and  $N(L_A)$  are subspaces of  $V$  and  $F^n$ , respectively. Hence,  $\phi_{\beta} : V \rightarrow F^n$  (that is,  $\dim(V) = \dim(F^n)$ ) being an isomorphism implies that  $\text{nullity}(T) = \text{nullity}(L_A)$ . ■

### Exercise 2.4.21

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces with ordered bases  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and  $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m\}$ , respectively. By Theorem 2.6, there exists linear transformations  $T_{ij} : V \rightarrow W$  such that

$$T_{ij}(v_k) = \begin{cases} w_i & \text{if } k = j \\ 0 & \text{if } k \neq j. \end{cases}$$

First prove that  $\{T_{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\}$  is a basis for  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ . Then let  $M^{ij}$  be the  $m \times n$  matrix with 1 in the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column and 0 elsewhere, and prove that  $[T_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = M^{ij}$ . Again by Theorem 2.6, there exists a linear transformation  $\Phi : \mathcal{L}(V, W) \rightarrow M_{m \times n}(F)$  such that  $\Phi(T_{ij}) = M^{ij}$ . Prove that  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** First, we need to show that  $S = \{T_{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\}$  is a basis for  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ ; that is, we need to show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} T_{ij}(v_k) = 0 \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n. \quad (1)$$

for some scalars  $a_{ij}$ . By definition of  $T_{ij}$ , observe that for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  we have  $j = k$  such that  $T_{ij}(v_k) = w_i$ . So, (1) can be re-written as

$$\sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} w_i = 0.$$

Now, we can use the linear independence of  $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m\}$  to conclude that  $a_{ij} = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . But this means that  $S$  must be linearly independent. Let  $T_{ij} \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$  but not in  $S$ . Then adjoining  $T_{ij}$  to  $S$  produces a linearly dependent set such that  $T_{ij} \in \text{span}(S)$  by Theorem 1.7. Hence,  $S$  is a basis for  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ .

Using the fact that  $S$  is a basis for  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ , we can now write that

$$w_i = T_{ij}(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n. \quad (2)$$

We can see that for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  that the matrix representation  $[T_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  contains entries  $a_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and 0 otherwise. But observe that this is just  $M^{ij}$  and hence  $[T_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = M^{ij}$ . By Theorem 2.6, we can see that there exists a linear transformation  $\Phi : \mathcal{L}(V, W) \rightarrow M_{m \times n}(F)$  such that  $\Phi(T_{ij}) = M^{ij}$ . Our goal now is to show that  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism. That is, we will show that  $\Phi$  is both injective and surjective. Let  $T_{ij}, U_{ij} \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$ .

Assume  $\Phi(T_{ij}) = \Phi(U_{ij})$ . Then we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi(T_{ij}) &= \Phi(U_{ij}) \\ M^{ij} &= N^{ij} \\ [T_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma} &= [U_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma}.\end{aligned}$$

Notice that the last equality implies that  $T_{ij} = U_{ij}$  by corollary to Theorem 2.6. Hence,  $\Phi$  is an injective map.

Let  $U_{ij} \in \mathcal{L}(V, W)$ . Using ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  and the fact that  $S$  is a basis for  $\mathcal{L}(V, W)$ , we can construct  $[U_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$  such that

$$w_i = U_{ij}(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m B_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Observe that  $[U_{ij}]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = N^{ij} = \Phi(U_{ij})$  and thus  $\Phi$  is surjective. We can conclude that  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism. ■

#### Exercise 2.4.24

Let  $T : V \rightarrow Z$  be a linear transformation of a vector space  $V$  onto a vector space  $Z$ . Define the mapping

$$\bar{T} : V/N(T) \rightarrow Z \text{ by } \bar{T}(v + N(T)) = T(v)$$

for any coset  $v + N(T)$  in  $V/N(T)$ .

- (a) Prove that  $\bar{T}$  is well-defined; that is, prove that if  $v + N(T) = v' + N(T)$ , then  $T(v) = T(v')$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $v + N(T) = v' + N(T)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(v) &= \bar{T}(v + N(T)) \\ &= \bar{T}(v' + N(T)) \\ &= T(v').\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\bar{T}$  is well-defined map. ■

- (b) Prove that  $\bar{T}$  is linear.

**Proof.** Let  $a \in F$  and  $v + N(T), u + N(T) \in V/N(T)$ . Then using the operations defined in Exercise 1.3.31 and the fact that  $T$  is linear, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{T}(a(v + N(T)) + (u + N(T))) &= \bar{T}((av + N(T)) + (u + N(T))) \\ &= \bar{T}((av + u) + N(T)) \\ &= T(av + u) \\ &= aT(v) + T(u) \\ &= a\bar{T}(v + N(T)) + \bar{T}(u + N(T)).\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\bar{T}$  is linear. ■

- (c) Prove that  $\bar{T}$  is an isomorphism.



**Proof.** First, we show that  $\bar{T}$  is an injective map. Let  $x + N(T), y + N(T) \in V/N(T)$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{T}(x + N(T)) &= \bar{T}(y + N(T)) \\ T(x) &= T(y).\end{aligned}$$

Since  $T$  is linear, we can write

$$T(x) = T(y) \Leftrightarrow T(x - y) = 0.$$

Hence,  $x - y \in N(T)$ . Since  $N(T)$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we have  $x + N(T) = y + N(T)$  by Exercise 1.3.31. This implies that  $\bar{T}$  is injective.

Now, we will show that  $\bar{T}$  is a surjective map. Since  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  onto  $Z$ , we know that any arbitrary  $y \in Z$  can be written as  $T(x) = y$  for some  $x \in V$ . By definition of  $\bar{T}$ , we have

$$y = T(x) = \bar{T}(x + N(T))$$

where  $x + N(T) \in V/N(T)$ . Hence,  $\bar{T}$  is a surjective linear map. Thus,  $\bar{T}$  is an isomorphism. ■

- (d) Prove that the diagram shown in Figure 2.3 commutes; that is, prove that  $T = \bar{T}\eta$ .

**Proof.** Let  $v \in V$ . Since  $\eta : V \rightarrow V/N(T)$  is defined by  $\eta(v) = v + N(T)$ , we can write that

$$\begin{aligned}T(v) &= \bar{T}(v + N(T)) \\ &= \bar{T}(\eta(v)) \\ &= \bar{T}\eta(v).\end{aligned}$$

Since  $v \in V$  is arbitrary, we know that  $T = \bar{T}\eta$ . ■

## 2.5 The Change of Coordinate Matrix

### Exercise 2.5.8

Prove the following generalization of Theorem 2.23. Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation from a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  to a finite-dimensional vector space  $W$ . Let  $\beta$  and  $\beta'$  be ordered bases for  $V$ , and let  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  be ordered bases for  $W$ . Then  $[T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} = P^{-1}[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}Q$  where  $Q$  is the matrix that changes  $\beta'$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates and  $P$  is the matrix that changes  $\gamma'$ -coordinates into  $\gamma$ -coordinates.

**Proof.** Our goal is to show that

$$P[T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} = [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma}Q \tag{1}$$

where  $P = [I_W]_{\gamma'}^{\gamma}$  and  $Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^{\beta}$ . Using Theorem 2.11, we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} P[T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} &= [I_W]_{\gamma'}^{\gamma} [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} = [I_W T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma} \\ &= [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma} \\ &= [T I_V]_{\beta'}^{\gamma} \\ &= [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} [I_V]_{\beta'}^{\beta} \\ &= [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} Q. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$P[T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} = [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} Q.$$

Since  $P$  is invertible (by Theorem 2.22), we can do a left-multiplication of  $P^{-1}$  on both sides of (1) to get our desired result

$$[T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} = P^{-1} [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} Q.$$

■

### Exercise 2.5.9

Prove that "is similar to" is an equivalence relation on  $M_{n \times n}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Note that

$$AI = IA = A$$

and that  $I$  is invertible. Thus, we have

$$A = I^{-1}AI$$

and that  $A \sim A$ .

Let  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Suppose  $A \sim B$ . Then there exists an invertible matrix  $Q$  such that

$$A = Q^{-1}BQ.$$

Using the invertibility of  $Q$ , we get our desired result

$$B = QAQ^{-1} = P^{-1}AP$$

where  $Q = P^{-1}$  and  $Q^{-1} = P$ . Hence,  $B \sim A$ .

Now, let  $A, B, C \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Suppose  $A \sim B$  and  $B \sim C$ . We want to show that  $A \sim C$ ; that is, we want to show that there exists an invertible  $Q \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  such that

$$A = Q^{-1}CQ.$$

Since  $A \sim B$ , there exists an invertible matrix  $P$  such that

$$A = P^{-1}BP.$$

Likewise,  $B \sim C$  implies that there exists an invertible matrix  $L$  such that

$$B = L^{-1}CL.$$

Using Exercise 2.4.4, we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P^{-1}BP \\ &= P^{-1}(L^{-1}CL)P \\ &= (LP)^{-1}C(LP) \\ &= Q^{-1}CQ \end{aligned}$$

where  $(LP)^{-1} = Q^{-1}$  and  $LP = Q$ . Hence,  $A \sim C$ . ■

### Exercise 2.5.10

Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are similar  $n \times n$  matrices, then  $\text{tr}(A) = \text{tr}(B)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $A$  and  $B$  are similar  $n \times n$  matrices. Then there exists an invertible matrix  $Q$  such that

$$A = Q^{-1}BQ.$$

Using the fact that  $\text{tr}(AB) = \text{tr}(BA)$  and that matrix multiplication is associative, we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(A) &= \text{tr}((Q^{-1}B)Q) \\ &= \text{tr}(Q(Q^{-1}B)) \\ &= \text{tr}((QQ^{-1})B) \\ &= \text{tr}(I_n B) \\ &= \text{tr}(B). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have that  $\text{tr}(A) = \text{tr}(B)$ . ■

### Exercise 2.5.11

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space with ordered bases  $\alpha, \beta$  and  $\gamma$ .

- (a) Prove that if  $Q$  and  $R$  are the change of coordinate matrices that change  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates and  $\beta$ -coordinates into  $\gamma$ -coordinates, respectively, then  $RQ$  is the change of coordinate matrix that changes  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\gamma$ -coordinates.

**Proof.** Since  $Q$  is the matrix that changes  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates, we have  $Q = [I_V]_{\alpha}^{\beta}$ . Likewise,  $R$  is the matrix that changes  $\beta$ -coordinates into  $\gamma$ -coordinates. So,  $R = [I_V]_{\beta}^{\gamma}$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} RQ &= [I_V]_{\alpha}^{\beta} [I_V]_{\beta}^{\gamma} \\ &= [I_V]_{\alpha}^{\gamma} \end{aligned}$$

by Theorem 2.11. Thus,  $RQ$  is the change of coordinate matrix that changes  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\gamma$ -coordinates. ■

- (b) Prove that if  $Q$  changes  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates, then  $Q^{-1}$  changes  $\beta$ -coordinates into  $\alpha$ -coordinates.

**Proof.** Suppose  $Q$  changes  $\alpha$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates, we have for any  $v \in V$  that

$$[v]_{\alpha} = Q[v]_{\beta}. \quad (1)$$

Since  $Q$  is invertible, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Q^{-1}(Q[v]_{\alpha}) &= Q^{-1}[v]_{\alpha} \Rightarrow (Q^{-1}Q)[v]_{\beta} = Q^{-1}[v]_{\alpha} \\ &\Rightarrow [v]_{\beta} = Q^{-1}[v]_{\alpha} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $Q^{-1}$  changes  $\beta$ -coordinates into  $\alpha$ -coordinates. ■

### Exercise 2.5.12

Prove the corollary to Theorem 2.23.

**Proof.** Observe that part (a) of Theorem 2.15 implies that  $[L_A]_{\gamma} = A$ . Note that  $Q = [I_{F^n}]_{\gamma}$  and that  $I_{F^n}L_A = L_AI_{F^n}$  so we write

$$\begin{aligned} Q[L_A]_{\gamma} &= [I_{F^n}]_{\gamma}[L_A]_{\gamma} \\ &= [I_{F^n}L_A]_{\gamma} \\ &= [L_AI_{F^n}]_{\gamma} \\ &= [L_A]_{\gamma}[I_{F^n}]_{\gamma} \\ &= AQ. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$Q[L_A]_{\gamma} = AQ \tag{1}$$

. Since  $Q$  is invertible, we can do left-multiplication of  $Q^{-1}$  on both sides of (1) to get our desired result

$$[L_A]_{\gamma} = Q^{-1}AQ. \quad \blacksquare$$

### Exercise 2.5.13

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over a field  $F$ , and let  $\beta = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Let  $Q$  be an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix with entries from  $F$ . Define

$$x'_j = \sum_{i=1}^n Q_{ij}x_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n,$$

and set  $\beta' = \{x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_n\}$ . Prove that  $\beta'$  is a basis for  $V$  and hence that  $Q$  is the change of coordinate matrix changing  $\beta'$ -coordinates into  $\beta$ -coordinates.

**Proof.** Let  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . First, we need to show that  $\beta'$  is linearly independent; that is, there exists scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  such that

$$\sum_{j=1}^n a_j x_j = 0 \tag{1}$$

where  $a_j = 0$  for all  $j$ . Since

$$x'_j = \sum_{i=1}^n Q_{ij}x_i,$$

we can re-write the left side of (1) into

$$\sum_{j=1}^n a_j \left( \sum_{i=1}^n Q_{ij} x_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \sum_{j=1}^n a_j Q_{ij} \right) x_i.$$

But since  $\beta = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is linearly independent, we have that

$$\sum_{j=1}^n a_j Q_{ij} = 0 \Leftrightarrow a_j Q = O$$

where  $O$  is the zero-matrix. Since  $Q$  is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix, we can multiply  $Q^{-1}$  on both sides of  $a_j Q = O$ , to write

$$\begin{aligned} (a_j Q) Q^{-1} &= a_j (Q Q^{-1}) \\ &= a_j I_n \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $a_j I_n = O$  implies that  $a_j = 0$  for all  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Hence,  $\beta'$  is linearly independent. Now, let  $v \in V$  but not in  $\beta'$ . Then adjoining  $v$  into  $\beta'$  will produce a linearly dependent set. Thus, Theorem 2.2 implies that  $\text{span}(\beta') = V$ . So,  $\beta'$  is a basis for  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 2.5.14

Prove the converse of Exercise 8: If  $A$  and  $B$  are each  $m \times n$  matrices with entries from a field  $F$ , and if there exists invertible  $m \times m$  and  $n \times n$  matrices  $P$  and  $Q$ , respectively, such that  $B = P^{-1} A Q$ , then there exist an  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$  and an  $m$ -dimensional vector space  $W$  (both over  $F$ ), ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\beta'$  for  $V$  and  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  for  $W$ , and a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that

$$A = [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} \quad \text{and} \quad B = [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'}.$$

**Proof.** Since  $A$  and  $B$  are  $m \times n$  with entries from a field  $F$ , let  $V = F^n$  and  $W = F^m$ . Since  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional, they contain ordered bases  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and  $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m\}$ . By Theorem 2.6, there must exist a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that

$$T(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Since  $V = F^n$  and  $W = F^m$ , let  $T = L_A$ . Hence, we have

$$[T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = [L_A]_{\beta}^{\gamma} = A$$

by part (a) of Theorem 2.15.

Now, define ordered bases  $\beta' = \{x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_n\}$  and  $\gamma' = \{w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_m\}$  for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. Since there exists invertible  $n \times n$  and  $m \times m$  matrices  $Q$  and  $P$  respectively, we can apply the result from Exercise 2.5.13 to imply that

$$x'_j = \sum_{i=1}^n Q_{ij} x_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n$$

and

$$w'_j = \sum_{i=1}^m P_{ij} w_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq n,$$

implying that  $Q$  and  $P$  are change of coordinate matrices that changes  $\beta'$ -coordinates to  $\beta$ -coordinates and  $\gamma'$ -coordinates to  $\gamma$ -coordinates, respectively.

Finally, we show that  $B = [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'}$ . Using Theorem 2.11, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} B = P^{-1}AQ &= [I_V]_{\gamma'}^{\gamma} [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma} [I_W]_{\beta'}^{\beta} \\ &= [I_V T]_{\beta}^{\gamma'} [I_W]_{\beta'}^{\beta} \\ &= [T]_{\beta}^{\gamma'} [I_W]_{\beta'}^{\beta} \\ &= [T I_W]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'} \\ &= [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $B = [T]_{\beta'}^{\gamma'}$  and we are done. ■

## Chapter 3

# Matrix Operations and Elementary Matrices

### 3.1 The Rank of a Matrix and Matrix Inverses

#### Exercise 3.2.3

Prove that for any  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$ ,  $\text{rank}(A) = 0$  if and only if  $A$  is the zero matrix.

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix. Notice that  $\text{rank}(A) = \dim(R(L_A))$ . By the Dimension Theorem, we can see that  $\text{rank}(A) = 0$  implies that

$$\dim(F^n) = \dim(R(L_A)) + \dim(N(L_A)) = \dim(N(L_A)).$$

Let  $\beta = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  is the standard ordered basis of  $F^n$ . Since  $\dim(F^n) = \dim(N(L_A)) = n$ , we know that

$$L_A(e_j) = a_j = 0 \quad \text{for all } 1 \leq j \leq n$$

where  $a_j$  is the  $j$ th column of  $A$ . Thus,  $A$  must be the zero matrix.

Conversely, suppose that  $A$  is the zero matrix. Then we can see that

$$a_j = 0 \quad \text{for all } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Using Theorem 3.5, we can see that

$$R(L_A) = \text{span}(\{a_j : 1 \leq j \leq n\}) = \text{span}(\{0\}).$$

Hence, we have

$$\text{rank}(A) = \dim(R(L_A)) = \dim(\text{span}(\{0\})) = 0.$$

Thus,  $\text{rank}(A) = 0$ . ■

#### Exercise 3.2.7

Express the invertible matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

as a product of elementary matrices.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 3.2.8

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix. Prove that if  $c$  is any nonzero scalar, then  $\text{rank}(cA) = \text{rank}(A)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix. Our goal is to show that

$$R(L_{cA}) = R(L_A).$$

Let  $y \in R(L_{cA})$ . Then for some  $x \in F^n$ , we have that

$$y = L_{cA}(x) = cL_A(x) = A(cx) = L_A(cx).$$

via part (c) of Theorem 2.15. Hence,  $y \in R(L_A)$ . Now, let  $y \in R(L_A)$ . Then for some  $x \in F^n$ , we have  $y = L_A(x)$ . But note that this can be re-written in the following form

$$y = L_A(x) = cL_A\left(\frac{1}{c}x\right) = L_{cA}\left(\frac{1}{c}x\right)$$

via part (c) of Theorem 2.15. Thus, we can see that  $y \in R(L_A)$ . This tells us that  $R(L_{cA}) = R(L_A)$  and that we have

$$\text{rank}(cA) = \dim(R(L_{cA})) = \dim(R(L_A)) = \text{rank}(A)$$

by theorem 1.11. ■

### Exercise 3.2.9

Complete the proof of the corollary to Theorem 3.4 by showing that elementary column operations preserve rank.

**Proof.** If  $B$  is obtained from a matrix  $A$  via an elementary column operation, then there exists an elementary matrix  $E$  such that  $B = AE$ . Using Theorem 3.2, we can see that  $E$  is invertible and that

$$\text{rank}(B) = \text{rank}(AE) = \text{rank}(A)$$

by part (a) of Theorem 3.4. Hence, elementary column operations preserve rank. ■

### Exercise 3.2.10

Prove Theorem 3.6 for the case that  $A$  is an  $m \times 1$  matrix.

**Proof.** Fix  $n = 1$ . Using at most one type 1 row operation and at most one type 2 row operation, we can transform  $A$  to have a 1 in the 1, 1 position. By means of at most  $m - 1$  type 3 column operations,  $A$  can be transformed into the following matrix

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where the only linearly independent row is the first row. Hence,  $\text{rank}(D) = \text{rank}(A) = 1$ . ■



### Exercise 3.2.11

Let

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & B' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $B'$  is an  $m \times n$  submatrix of  $B$ . Prove that if  $\text{rank}(B) = r$ , then  $\text{rank}(B') = r - 1$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  be the standard ordered basis of  $F^n$ . Observe by Theorem 3.5 that

$$R(L_B) = \text{span}(L_B(\beta)) = \text{span}(\{b_j : 1 \leq j \leq n\}) \quad (1)$$

where  $b_j$  is the  $j$ th column of  $B$ . Note that

$$L_B(\beta) = \{b_j : 1 \leq j \leq n\} = \{b_1\} \cup \{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\}.$$

So, (1) can be re-written as

$$\begin{aligned} R(L_B) &= \text{span}(\{b_1\} \cup \{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\}) \\ &= \text{span}(\{b_1\}) + \text{span}(\{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\}) \end{aligned}$$

by Exercise 14 of Section 1.4. Note that  $\{b_1\} \cap \{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\}$  is disjoint. By the formula found in Exercise 29 in Section 1.6, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(B) &= \dim(R(L_B)) \\ &= \dim(\text{span}(b_1) + \text{span}(\{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\})) \\ &= \dim(\text{span}(\{b_1\})) + \dim(\text{span}(\{b_j : 1 < j \leq n\})) \\ &= 1 + \dim(R(L_{B'})) \quad (\text{Theorem 3.5}) \\ &= 1 + \text{rank}(B'). \end{aligned}$$

Solving for  $\text{rank}(B')$ , we get our desired result that

$$\text{rank}(B') = \text{rank}(B) - 1 = r - 1.$$

■

### Exercise 3.2.12

Let  $B'$  and  $D'$  be  $m \times n$  matrices, and let  $B$  and  $D$  be  $(m+1) \times (n+1)$  matrices respectively defined by

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & B' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & D' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}.$$

Prove that if  $B'$  can be transformed into  $D'$  by an elementary row [column] operation, then  $B$  can be transformed into  $D$  by an elementary row [column] operation.

**Proof.** If  $B'$  can be transformed into  $D'$  by an elementary row operation, then there exists

an invertible matrix  $E'$  such that  $D' = E'B'$ . Observe that

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & D' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & E'B' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now, let's apply an elementary row operation on  $D$  so that  $D$  can be written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & B' & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix}.$$

But this tells us that there exists some invertible matrix  $E$  such that

$$B = ED. \quad (1)$$

Since  $E$  is invertible, we can apply its inverse  $E^{-1}$  on the left side of (1) to get that

$$D = E^{-1}B.$$

Thus,  $D$  can be obtained from  $B$  via an elementary row operation. ■

### Exercise 3.2.13

Prove (b) and (c) of Corollary 2 to Theorem 3.6.

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$  be arbitrary.

- (b) Let  $\gamma = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m\}$  be the standard ordered basis for  $F^m$ . Since  $L_{A^t} : F^m \rightarrow F^n$  is linear, we can see by Theorem 2.2 that

$$R(L_{A^t}) = \text{span}(L_{A^t}(\gamma)) = \text{span}(\{L_{A^t}(e_j) : 1 \leq j \leq m\}).$$

Furthermore, we have that  $L_{A^t}(e_j) = A^t e_j = a_j^t$  where  $a_j^t$  is the  $j$ th column of  $A^t$  (or the  $j$ th row of  $A$ ). Since  $\text{rank}(A^t) = \text{rank}(A)$  by part (a), we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(A) &= \text{rank}(A^t) = \dim(R(L_{A^t}(\gamma))) \\ &= \dim(\text{span}(\{L_{A^t}(e_j) : 1 \leq j \leq m\})). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the rank of  $A$  is generated by its rows.

- (c) Part (b) and Theorem 3.5 tells us that the rows and columns generate subspaces of the same dimension that are numerically equal to the rank of  $A$ . ■

### Exercise 3.2.14

Let  $T, U : V \rightarrow W$  be linear transformations.

- (a) Prove that  $R(T+U) \subseteq R(T) + R(U)$ . (See the definition of the sum of subsets of a vector space in Section 1.3).

**Proof.** Let  $y \in R(T+U)$ . Then for some  $x \in V$ , we know that  $(T+U)(x) = y$ . Since  $U$  and  $T$  are both linear, we have that

$$y = (T+U)(x) = T(x) + U(x).$$

But note that  $T(x) \in R(T)$  and  $U(x) \in R(U)$ . Thus,  $y \in R(T) + R(U)$  and so  $R(T+U) \subseteq R(T) + R(U)$ . ■

- (b) Prove that if  $W$  is finite-dimensional, then  $\text{rank}(T+U) \leq \text{rank}(T) + \text{rank}(U)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional vector space. Since  $R(T+U)$  and  $R(T) + R(U)$  are subspaces of  $W$ , we know that these subspaces are also finite-dimensional vector spaces by Theorem 1.11. By part (a), we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(T+U) &= \dim(R(T+U)) \\ &\leq \dim(R(T) + R(U)) \\ &= \dim(R(T)) + \dim(R(U)) - \dim(R(T) \cap R(U)) \\ &\leq \dim(R(T)) + \dim(R(U)) \\ &= \text{rank}(T) + \text{rank}(U). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that

$$\text{rank}(T+U) \leq \text{rank}(T) + \text{rank}(U). \quad \blacksquare$$

- (c) Deduce from (b) that  $\text{rank}(A+B) \leq \text{rank}(A) + \text{rank}(B)$  for any  $m \times n$  matrices  $A$  and  $B$ .

**Proof.** Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(A+B) &= \text{rank}(L_{A+B}) \\ &= \text{rank}(L_A + L_B) && \text{(part (c) of Theorem 2.15)} \\ &\leq \text{rank}(L_A) + \text{rank}(L_B) && \text{(part (b))} \\ &= \text{rank}(A) + \text{rank}(B). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we can see that  $\text{rank}(A+B) \leq \text{rank}(A) + \text{rank}(B)$ . ■

### Exercise 3.2.15

Suppose that  $A$  and  $B$  are matrices having  $n$  rows. Prove that  $M(A|B) = (MA|MB)$  for any  $m \times n$  matrices  $M$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times p$  and  $n \times \ell$  matrices, respectively. Suppose  $M$  be is an arbitrary  $m \times n$  matrix. Then define the product  $M(A|B)$  as

$$M(A|B) = \sum_{k=1}^n M_{ik}(A|B)_{kj} \quad (1)$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq p + \ell$ . For  $1 \leq j \leq p$ , we can see that product in (1) can be re-written as

$$M(A|B) = \sum_{k=1}^n M_{ik} A_{kj} = MA. \quad (2)$$

For  $p \leq j \leq \ell$ , (1) can be re-written into

$$M(A|B) = \sum_{k=1}^n M_{ik} B_{kj} = MB. \quad (3)$$

So, with (2) and (3) we can write that

$$M(A|B) = (MA|MB).$$

■

### Exercise 3.2.16

Supply the details to the proof of (b) of Theorem 3.4.

**Proof.** Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} R(L_{PA}) &= R(L_P L_A) \\ &= L_P L_A(F^n) \\ &= L_P(L_A(F^n)) \\ &= L_P(R(L_A)). \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

Note that  $R(L_A)$  is a subspace of  $F^m$ . By exercise 17 of Section 2.4, we can see that the invertibility of  $L_P$  also implies that  $L_P(R(L_A))$  is also a subspace of  $F^m$ . Thus, we have that  $\dim(R(L_A)) = \dim(L_P(R(L_A)))$  implies  $R(L_A) = L_P(R(L_A))$  by Theorem 1.11. So (1) implies that  $R(L_{PA}) = R(L_A)$  and thus

$$\text{rank}(PA) = \text{rank}(A).$$

■

### Exercise 3.2.17

Prove that if  $B$  is a  $3 \times 1$  matrix and  $C$  is a  $1 \times 3$  matrix, then the  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $BC$  has rank at most 1. Conversely, show that if  $A$  is any  $3 \times 3$  matrix having rank 1, then there exists a  $3 \times 1$  matrix  $B$  and a  $1 \times 3$  matrix  $C$  such that  $A = BC$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $B$  is a  $3 \times 1$  matrix and  $C$  is a  $1 \times 3$  matrix where

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} \\ B_{21} \\ B_{31} \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$C = (C_{11} \ C_{12} \ C_{13}).$$

Computing  $BC$  gives us

$$BC = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11}C_{11} & B_{11}C_{12} & B_{11}C_{13} \\ B_{21}C_{11} & B_{21}C_{12} & B_{21}C_{13} \\ B_{31}C_{11} & B_{31}C_{12} & B_{31}C_{13} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Observe that each column vector of this matrix is just  $B$  scaled by entries in  $C$ ; that is,

$u_j = BC_{1j}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  where  $u_j$  has a rank of 1 and  $u_j$  is  $j$ th column vector of  $BC$ . Thus,  $BC$  has a rank of at most 1.

Conversely, let  $A \in M_{3 \times 3}(F)$  with  $\text{rank}(A) = 1$  and let  $u_j$  for  $1 \leq j \leq 3$  denote the  $j$ th column vector of  $A$ . Since  $\text{rank}(A) = 1$ , there exists only one linearly independent column, say  $u_1$ . This tells us that the other two columns, namely  $u_2$  and  $u_3$ , are scalar multiples of  $u_1$ . Hence, for some nonzero  $k$  and  $c$  in  $F$ , we have that

$$u_2 = ku_1 \text{ and } u_3 = cu_1.$$

Now we can write  $A$  in the following way

$$A = (u_1 \quad ku_1 \quad cu_1) = u_1 (1 \quad k \quad c)$$

where

$$u_1 = B \text{ and } C = (1 \quad k \quad c)$$

both having rank 1. ■

### Exercise 3.2.18

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $B$  be an  $n \times p$  matrix. Prove that  $AB$  can be written as a sum of  $n$  matrices of rank one.

**Proof.** Let  $u_j$  be the  $j$ th column vector of  $AB$ . By part (b) Exercise 2.3.14, we can see that  $u_j$  can be written in terms of a linear combination of column vectors of  $A$  and entries from  $B$  as coefficients. In other words, we have

$$u_j = \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ij}x_i \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq p$$

where  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $x_i$  is the  $i$ th column vector of  $A$  and that each  $x_i$  has a rank of 1. ■

### Exercise 3.2.19

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix with rank  $m$  and  $B$  be an  $n \times p$  matrix with rank  $n$ . Determine the rank of  $AB$ . Justify your answer.

**Proof.** We determine that  $\text{rank}(AB)$  can be at most  $n$  by Theorem 3.7. ■

### Exercise 3.2.21

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix with  $\text{rank}(A) = m$ . Prove that there exists an  $n \times m$  matrix  $B$  such that  $AB = I_m$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^t) = m$ . This tells us that  $A^t$  is an invertible matrix. By Theorem 3.4, we can write that  $\text{rank}(AA^t) = \text{rank}(A) = m$ . Hence, we have that  $AA^t$  is an invertible matrix and thus there must exist a matrix  $B'$  such that

$$(AA^t)B' = I_m \Leftrightarrow A(A^tB') = I_m$$

where  $A^tB' = B$  is an  $n \times m$  matrix. ■

---

**Exercise 3.2.22**

Let  $B$  be an  $n \times m$  matrix with  $\text{rank}(B) = m$ . Prove that there exists an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  such that  $AB = I_m$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $\text{rank}(B) = \text{rank}(B^t) = m$  by Corollary 2 to Theorem 3.6. By Corollary 2 to Theorem 2.18 and fact 3 found in page 103,  $\text{rank}(B^t) = m$  implies that  $B^t$  is invertible. This implies that

$$\text{rank}(B^t B) = \text{rank}(B) = m$$

by Corollary 2 to Theorem 3.6. Again,  $B^t B$  is also invertible and thus there exist a matrix  $A'$  such that

$$A'(B^t B) = I_m \Leftrightarrow (A' B^t) B = I_m$$

where  $A = A' B^t$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix. ■

## Chapter 4

# Determinants

### 4.1 Determinants of Order 2

#### Exercise 4.1.5

Prove that if  $B$  is the matrix obtained by interchanging the rows of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $A$ , then  $\det(B) = -\det(A)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $B \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  can be obtained by interchanging the rows of  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} A_{21} & A_{22} \\ A_{11} & A_{12} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Applying the definition of determinant for  $2 \times 2$  matrices, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} \det(B) &= A_{12}A_{21} - A_{11}A_{22} \\ &= -(A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21}) \\ &= -\det(A). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have that  $\det(B) = -\det(A)$ . ■

#### Exercise 4.1.6

Prove that if the two columns of  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  are identical, then  $\det(A) = 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  be defined as

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

with  $A_{11} = A_{12}$  and  $A_{21} = A_{22}$  by assumption. Applying the definition of the determinant gives us  $\det(A) = 0$ . ■

#### Exercise 4.1.7

Prove that  $\det(A^t) = \det(A)$  for any  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A^t = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{21} \\ A_{12} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Applying the determinant to  $A$  and  $A^t$ , we can see that

$$\det(A) = A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} = \det(A^t).$$

■

#### Exercise 4.1.8

Prove that if  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  is upper triangular, then  $\det(A)$  equals the product of diagonal entries of  $A$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  be an upper triangular matrix. Then we have

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using the definition of determinant, we have

$$\det(A) = A_{11}A_{22} - 0A_{12} = A_{11}A_{22}.$$

Hence,  $\det(A)$  equals the product of diagonal entries of  $A$ .

■

#### Exercise 4.1.9

Prove that  $\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$  for any  $A, B \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A, B \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  with

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using the definition of the matrix product, we have that

$$AB = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} + A_{12}B_{21} & A_{11}B_{12} + A_{12}B_{22} \\ A_{21}B_{11} + A_{22}B_{21} & A_{21}B_{12} + A_{22}B_{22} \end{pmatrix}.$$

By definition of the determinant, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \det(AB) &= (A_{11}B_{11} + A_{12}B_{21})(A_{21}B_{12} + A_{22}B_{22}) \\ &\quad - (A_{21}B_{11} + A_{22}B_{21})(A_{11}B_{12} + A_{12}B_{22}) \\ &= A_{11}A_{21}B_{11}B_{12} + A_{12}A_{21}B_{12}B_{21} \\ &\quad + A_{12}A_{22}B_{21}B_{22} + A_{12}A_{21}B_{11}B_{22} \\ &= (A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21})B_{11}B_{22} - (A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21})B_{12}B_{21} \\ &= (A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21})(B_{11}B_{22} - B_{12}B_{21}) \\ &= \det(A)\det(B). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have that  $\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$ .

■

#### Exercise 4.1.10

The **classical adjoint** of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  is the matrix

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix}.$$



Prove that

- (a)  $CA = AC = [\det(A)]I$ .
- (b)  $\det(C) = \det(A)$ .
- (c) The classical adjoint of  $A^t$  is  $C^t$ .
- (d) If  $A$  is invertible, then  $A^{-1} = [\det(A)]^{-1}C$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A, C \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  where  $C$  is the classical adjoint of  $A$ .

- (a) We show that  $CA = [\det(A)]I$ . Applying the definition of the matrix product, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} CA &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} & A_{22}A_{12} - A_{12}A_{22} \\ A_{11}A_{21} - A_{11}A_{21} & A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \det(A) & 0 \\ 0 & \det(A) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= [\det(A)]I. \end{aligned}$$

Note that proving  $AC = [\det(A)]I$  is a similar process as above. Hence, we have  $AC = CA = [\det(A)]I$

- (b) Applying the definition of determinant gives us

$$\det(C) = A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21} = \det(A).$$

- (c) Note that the transpose of  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  is

$$A^t = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{21} \\ A_{12} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

where the classical adjoint of  $A^t$  is

$$W = \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{21} \\ -A_{12} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix}.$$

But note that this is just the transpose of  $C$  which was defined earlier. So, we have  $W = C^t$  is the classical adjoint of  $A^t$ .

- (d) Since  $A$  is an invertible  $2 \times 2$  matrix, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} A^{-1} &= \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{pmatrix} A_{22} & -A_{12} \\ -A_{21} & A_{11} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= [\det(A)]^{-1}C \end{aligned}$$

by Theorem 4.2. ■

### Exercise 4.1.11

Let  $\delta : M_{2 \times 2}(F) \rightarrow F$  be a function with the following three properties.

- (i)  $\delta$  is a linear function of each row of the matrix when the other row is held fixed.
- (ii) If the two rows of  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$  are identical  $\delta(A) = 0$ .
- (iii) If  $I$  is the  $2 \times 2$  identity matrix, then  $\delta(I) = 1$ .

Prove that  $\delta(A) = \det(A)$  for all  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{2 \times 2}(F)$ . Let the vectors  $u, v \in F^2$  for an ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $F^2$ . Define the row vectors of  $A$  by  $u = (A_{11}, A_{12})$  and  $v = (A_{21}, A_{22})$ . Note that

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}$$

and that

$$\delta \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = O \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \cdot A \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $O$  is the **orientation** of  $\beta$  and  $A$  is the area of the parallelogram formed by  $u$  and  $v$ . Since

$$A = \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \right|,$$

and definition of  $O$ , we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \delta(A) &= \delta \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = O \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \cdot A \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{\det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}}{\left| \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \right|} \cdot \left| \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \right| \\ &= \det \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \det(A). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\delta(A) = \det(A)$ . ■

## 4.2 Determinants of Order $n$

### Exercise 4.2.23

Prove that the determinant of an upper triangular matrix is the product of its diagonal entries.

**Proof.** We proceed by inducting on  $n$ . The result easily follows from cases  $n = 1$  and  $n = 2$ , with the former leading to just the single entry itself and the latter being easily shown by applying the determinant formula found in Section 4.1 for  $2 \times 2$  upper triangular matrices.

Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  be upper triangular. Now, assume the result holds for  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  upper triangular matrices and that  $n \geq 3$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . We can obtain a new matrix  $D$  by performing a finite number of type 3 row operations on  $A$  to convert the entries found in the first row and columns  $1 < j \leq n$  into zeroes. Using cofactor expansion along the first

row, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \det(D) &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} D_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{1j}) \\
 &= (-1)^{1+1} D_{11} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{11}) + (-1)^{1+2} D_{12} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{12}) + \cdots \\
 &\quad + (-1)^{1+n} D_{1n} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{1n}) \\
 &= (-1)^{1+1} D_{11} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{11}) + (-1)^{1+2}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{12}) + \cdots \\
 &\quad + (-1)^{1+n}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{1n}) \\
 &= (-1)^{1+1} D_{11} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{11}).
 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\tilde{D}_{11}$  is an  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  matrix, we can apply the induction to hypothesis to write that

$$\det(\tilde{D}_{11}) = \prod_{i=2}^n D_{ii}.$$

Thus, we must have that

$$\det(D) = (-1)^{1+1} D_{11} \cdot \det(\tilde{D}_{11}) = \prod_{i=1}^n D_{ii}.$$

Note that  $\det(A) = \det(D)$  by Theorem 4.6 and that  $D_{ii} = A_{ii}$  since we only changed the entries in the first row (that were not  $A_{11}$ ). Thus, the result holds for  $n \times n$  upper triangular matrices.  $\blacksquare$

### Exercise 4.2.24

Prove the corollary to Theorem 4.3.

**Proof.** We proceed by inducting on  $n$ . Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . If  $n = 1$ , then we simply have  $A_{11} = 0$  and the result follows immediately. If  $n = 2$ , then the result follows from applying the formula for  $2 \times 2$  determinants and choosing either the  $i = 1$  or  $i = 2$  as the rows with all zeros. Now, assume that the corollary holds for  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  matrices. Let  $n \geq 3$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Let  $r$  represent the selected row of all zero entries. Suppose that for some  $r$  ( $1 \leq r \leq n$ ), we have  $a_r = u + kv$  for some  $u, v \in F^n$  and  $k \in F$ . Let  $u = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$  and  $v = (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ , and let  $B$  and  $C$  be the matrices obtained from  $A$  by replacing row  $r$  of  $A$  by  $u$  and  $v$ , respectively. Furthermore, let the row  $r-1$  be defined as in the proof for Theorem 4.3. If  $r = 1$ , then by cofactor expansion along the first row, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \det(A) &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\
 &= (-1)^{1+1}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{11}) + (-1)^{1+2}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{12}) + \cdots \\
 &\quad + (-1)^{1+n}(0) \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1n}) \\
 &= 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Now, suppose  $r > 1$ . Then by Theorem 4.3, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= \det(B) + k\det(C) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} B_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) + k \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} C_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{C}_{1j}).\end{aligned}$$

Note that  $A_{1j} = B_{1j} = C_{1j}$  and that  $\tilde{A}_{1j} = \tilde{B}_{1j} = \tilde{C}_{1j}$  except for row  $r - 1$ . Since  $\tilde{B}_{1j}$  and  $\tilde{C}_{1j}$  are  $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$  matrices, we find that  $\det(\tilde{B}_{1j}) = 0$  and  $\det(\tilde{C}_{1j}) = 0$  by our induction hypothesis. So, we get that

$$\det(A) = \det(B) + k\det(C) = 0 + 0 = 0$$

and thus  $\det(A) = 0$ . Hence, we can see that the corollary holds for all  $n \times n$  matrices. ■

### Exercise 4.2.25

Prove that  $\det(kA) = k^n \det(A)$  for any  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and  $k \in F$  be nonzero. We proceed by inducting on  $n$ . If  $n = 1$ , then the result follows immediately. If  $n = 2$ , then apply the formula found in section 4.1 for  $2 \times 2$  matrices to  $A$  to get  $\det(kA) = k^2 \det(A)$ .

Suppose  $n > 2$  and suppose the result holds for  $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$  matrices. Since  $\tilde{A}_{1j}$  is an  $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$  matrix, we must have  $\det(k\tilde{A}_{1j}) = k^{n-1} \det(\tilde{A}_{1j})$ . Using cofactor expansion along the first row, we get that

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} kA_{1j} \cdot \det(k\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\ &= k \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot k^{n-1} \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\ &= k \cdot k^{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\ &= k^n \det(A).\end{aligned}$$

■

### Exercise 4.2.26

Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Under what conditions is  $\det(-A) = \det(A)$ .

**Proof.** In order for  $\det(-A) = \det(A)$ ,  $A$  must be an even matrix. ■

### Exercise 4.2.27

Prove that if  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  has two identical columns, then  $\det(A) = 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Suppose that  $A$  contains two identical columns at row  $r$  and row  $s$  where  $r \neq s$ . Let  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$  be the columns of  $A$ . Note that these are the rows of  $A^t$ . Observe that  $u_r = u_s$  for  $r \neq s$ , we can apply the Corollary to Theorem 4.4 to write

$$\det(A^t) = 0.$$

Since  $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^t)$ , we get that  $\det(A) = \det(A^t) = 0$ . Hence,  $\det(A) = 0$  for all  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . ■

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . We proceed by inducting on  $n \geq 2$ . For  $n = 2$ , let  $u_1 = (A_{11}, A_{21})$  and  $u_2 = (A_{12}, A_{22})$  denote the two columns that make up  $A$ . By Exercise 4.1.6, we get that  $\det(A) = 0$ .

Now, suppose  $n > 2$  and that the result holds for  $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$  matrices. Let  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Using cofactor expansion along any row  $i$ , we get that

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} A_{ij} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \quad (1)$$

by Theorem 4.4. Since  $\tilde{A}_{1j}$  is an  $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$  matrix, we know that  $\tilde{A}_{1j}$  contains identical columns  $u_r$  and  $u_s$  where  $r \neq s$ . Thus, we have that  $\det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) = 0$  by our induction hypothesis. Thus, (1) implies that  $\det(A) = 0$  which ends our induction argument. ■

### Exercise 4.2.28

Compute  $\det(E_i)$  if  $E_i$  is an elementary matrix of type  $i$ .

**Solution.** Let  $E_i$  be an elementary matrix of type  $i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Computing  $\det(E_i)$  depends on the type of elementary operations we perform on  $E_i$ . If we interchange any two rows or columns of  $E_i$ , then we would find that  $\det(E_i) = -1 = -\det(I_i)$ . If we add a scalar multiple  $k$  to  $E_i$ , then we would find that  $\det(E_i) = c = c\det(I_i)$ . Lastly, performing any type 3 elementary operation on  $E_i$  gives us  $\det(E_i) = 1 = \det(I_i)$ . ■

### Exercise 4.2.29

Prove that if  $E$  is an elementary matrix, then  $\det(E^t) = \det(E)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $E$  is an  $n \times n$  elementary matrix. Observe that  $E_{1j} = E^t_{j1}$  and so using cofactor expansion along the first row, of  $E$ , we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \det(E) &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} E_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{E}_{1j}) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} (E^t)_{j1} \cdot \det(\tilde{E}_{j1}^t) \\ &= \det(E^t). \end{aligned}$$

Note that the second equality above is just a cofactor expansion along the first column. Hence,

$$\det(E) = \det(E^t). \quad \blacksquare$$



## Chapter 5

# Diagonalization

### 5.1 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

#### Exercise 5.1.5

Prove Theorem 5.4.

**Proof.** Let  $v \in V$  be an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . Since  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ , we know that  $T(v) = \lambda v$  where  $v \neq 0$ . Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} T(v) = \lambda v &\Leftrightarrow T(v) - \lambda v = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow (T - \lambda I)(v) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that this is true if and only if  $v \in N(T - \lambda I)$ . We can reverse this argument to show that  $v \in V$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . ■

#### Exercise 5.1.6

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , and let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Prove that  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$  if and only if  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $[T]_\beta$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ . Since  $\beta$  is an ordered basis for  $V$  (suppose  $\dim(V) = n$ ) and  $T(v) = \lambda v$  for  $v \neq 0$ , we have that

$$[T(v)]_\beta = [\lambda v]_\beta = \lambda[v]_\beta$$

by Theorem 2.8. Using Theorem 2.14, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} [T(v)]_\beta = \lambda[v]_\beta &\Rightarrow [T]_\beta[v]_\beta = \lambda[v]_\beta \\ &\Rightarrow ([T]_\beta - \lambda I_n)[v]_\beta = 0 \end{aligned}$$

This implies that  $[T]_\beta - \lambda I_n$  is not invertible for all  $[v]_\beta$ . So,  $\det([T]_\beta - \lambda I_n) = 0$  which is true if and only if  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $[T]_\beta$  by Theorem 5.2. This argument can be reversed to show that  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ . ■

#### Exercise 5.1.7

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ . We define the **determinant** of  $T$ , denoted  $\det(T)$ , as follows: Choose any ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $V$ , and define  $\det(T) = \det([T]_\beta)$ .

- (a) Prove that the preceding definition is independent of the choice of an ordered basis for  $V$ , then  $\det([T]_\beta) = \det([T]_\gamma)$ .

**Proof.** If  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are two ordered bases for  $V$ , then we must have  $\det(T) = \det([T]_\beta)$  and  $\det(T) = \det([T]_\gamma)$ . This implies that  $\det([T]_\beta) = \det([T]_\gamma)$ . ■

- (b) Prove that  $T$  is invertible if and only if  $\det(T) \neq 0$ .

**Proof.** We have  $T$  is invertible if and only if  $[T]_\beta$  is invertible by Corollary 1 to Theorem 2.18. This is true if and only if  $\det([T]_\beta) \neq 0$  by Corollary to Theorem 4.7. Thus, we have  $\det(T) = \det([T]_\beta) \neq 0$ . Note that this argument is reversible. ■

- (c) Prove that if  $T$  is invertible, then  $\det(T^{-1}) = [\det(T)]^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is invertible. By part (b) and Theorem 2.18, we can see that  $\det([T]_\beta) \neq 0$  and that  $([T]_\beta)^{-1} = [T^{-1}]_\beta$ . Thus,

$$\det(T^{-1}) = \det([T^{-1}]_\beta) = \det\left([T]_\beta^{-1}\right).$$

■

- (d) Prove that if  $U$  is also a linear operator on  $V$ , then  $\det(TU) = \det(T) \cdot \det(U)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  and let  $TU$  and  $[TU]_\beta$  and  $[T]_\beta[U]_\beta$  be defined. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \det(TU) &= \det([TU]_\beta) \\ &= \det([T]_\beta[U]_\beta) && \text{(Corollary to Theorem 2.11)} \\ &= \det([T]_\beta)\det([U]_\beta) && \text{(Corollary to Theorem 4.7)} \\ &= \det(T)\det(U). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $\det(TU) = \det(T)\det(U)$ . ■

- (e) Prove that  $\det(T - \lambda I_V) = \det([T]_\beta - \lambda I)$  for any scalar  $\lambda$  and any ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\lambda \in F$  and let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \det(T - \lambda I_V) &= \det([T - \lambda I_V]_\beta) \\ &= \det([T]_\beta - \lambda[I_V]_\beta) && \text{(parts (a) and (b) of Theorem 2.8)} \\ &= \det([T]_\beta - \lambda I) \end{aligned}$$

where  $I$  is the matrix representation of  $I_V$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.8

- (a) Prove that a linear operator  $T$  on a finite-dimensional vector space is invertible if and only if zero is not an eigenvalue of  $T$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is an invertible linear operator. Suppose for sake of contradiction that  $\lambda = 0$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ . Using Theorem 5.2, we write

$$\det([T]_\beta - \lambda I) = \det([T]_\beta) = 0.$$

Note that  $\det([T]_\beta) \neq 0$  since  $T$  is invertible which is a contradiction. Thus,  $\lambda = 0$



cannot be an eigenvalue of  $T$  if  $T$  is invertible.

For the backwards direction, we proceed via proving the contrapositive. Let  $\lambda = 0$ . Observe that  $\det([T]_\beta)$  can be written in the following way:

$$\det([T]_\beta) = \det([T]_\beta - \lambda I).$$

Since  $T$  is not invertible, we have  $\det([T]_\beta) = 0$  implies  $\det([T]_\beta - \lambda I) = 0$ . Thus,  $\lambda = 0$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ . ■

- (b) Let  $T$  be an invertible linear operator. Prove that a scalar  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$  if and only if  $\lambda^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ . Then for  $v \neq 0$  we have  $T(v) = \lambda v$ . Since  $T$  is an invertible linear operator, we have  $\lambda \neq 0$  (by part (a)) implies

$$\begin{aligned} T(v) = \lambda v &\Rightarrow T^{-1}(T(v)) = T^{-1}(\lambda v) \\ &\Rightarrow T^{-1}T(v) = T^{-1}(\lambda v) \\ &\Rightarrow I_V(v) = \lambda T^{-1}(v) \\ &\Rightarrow \lambda^{-1}v = T^{-1}(v). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\lambda^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^{-1}$ . To prove the backwards direction, we can just reverse the argument written above. ■

- (c) State and prove results analogous to (a) and (b) for matrices.

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . The analogous results to (a) and (b) are

$A$  is invertible if and only if 0 is not an eigenvalue of  $A$

and

If  $L_A$  is an invertible linear operator, then  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$  if and only if  $\lambda^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $L_A^{-1}$ .

To prove the two results above, apply parts (a) and (b) to the linear operator  $L_A$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.9

Prove that the eigenvalues of an upper triangular matrix  $M$  are the diagonal entries of  $M$ .

**Proof.** Let  $M$  be an upper triangular matrix. Let  $\lambda_j \in F$  be the eigenvalues of  $M$  and  $v_j$  be the corresponding eigenvectors. By Theorem 5.4, we see that ■

### Exercise 5.1.10

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space, and let  $\lambda$  be any scalar.

- (a) For any ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $V$ , prove that  $[\lambda I_V]_\beta = \lambda I$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Using part (b) of Theorem 2.8, we obtain

$$[\lambda I_V]_\beta = \lambda [I_V]_\beta = \lambda I$$

where  $I$  is the identity matrix. ■

- (b) Compute the characteristic polynomial of  $\lambda I_V$ .

**Solution.** The characteristic polynomial of  $\lambda I_V$  is

$$f(t) = \det(\lambda I_V - tI_V) = \det(O) = 0$$

where  $O$  is the zero matrix. ■

- (c) Show that  $\lambda I_V$  is diagonalizable and has only one eigenvalue.

**Proof.** Since  $V$  is a finite-dimensional vector space, let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Thus, we have

$$\lambda I_V(v_j) = \lambda v_j \text{ for all } 1 \leq j \leq n.$$

Since each  $v_j$  is linearly independent, we have that each column of  $[\lambda I_V]_\beta$  is linearly independent where  $\lambda_j = ([\lambda I_V]_\beta)_{ij} = \lambda$  for  $i = j$  and 0 elsewhere. Thus, we have that  $\lambda I_V$  is diagonalizable by Theorem 5.1 and that  $\lambda$  is its only eigenvalue. ■

### Exercise 5.1.11

A **scalar matrix** is a square matrix of the form  $\lambda I$  for some scalar  $\lambda$ ; that is, a scalar matrix is a diagonal matrix in which all the diagonal entries are equal.

- (a) Prove that if a square matrix  $A$  is similar to a scalar matrix  $\lambda I$ , then  $A = \lambda I$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $A$  is a square matrix that is similar to a scalar matrix  $\lambda I$ . Then there exists an invertible square matrix  $Q$  such that  $A = Q^{-1}\lambda IQ$ . Observe that

$$A = \lambda(Q^{-1}IQ) = \lambda(Q^{-1}Q) = \lambda I$$

by part (b) of Theorem 2.15. ■

- (b) Show that a diagonalizable matrix having only one eigenvalue is a scalar matrix.

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $F^n$ . Since  $A = \lambda I$  by part (a), and that  $\lambda I_{F^n}$  is a diagonalizable and has only one eigenvalue, then  $A = [\lambda I_{F^n}]_\beta$  must be a diagonal matrix where the all the diagonal entries are equal to each other. ■

- (c) Prove that  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is not diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Note that  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is not a diagonal matrix since  $A_{12} = 1 \neq 0$ . Thus,  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is not diagonalizable. ■

### Exercise 5.1.12

- (a) Prove that similar matrices have the same characteristic polynomial.

**Proof.** Let  $A, B$  be square matrices. Let the characteristic polynomials of  $A$  and  $B$  be

$$f(t) = \det(A - tI) \text{ and } g(t) = \det(B - tI)$$

respectively. We claim that  $A - tI_n$  is similar to  $B - tI_n$  which will allow us to show that  $\det(A - tI) = \det(B - tI)$ . Since  $A \sim B$ , there exists an invertible square matrix  $Q$  such that  $A = Q^{-1}BQ$ . Then observe using Theorem 2.12, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} A - \lambda I &= Q^{-1}BQ - t(Q^{-1}Q) \\ &= Q^{-1}BQ - Q^{-1}tIQ \\ &= Q^{-1}(B - tI)Q. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $A - tI \sim B - tI$  and so,  $f(t) = \det(A - tI) = \det(B - tI) = g(t)$ . ■

- (b) Show that the definition of the characteristic polynomial of a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  is independent of the choice of basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  be two ordered bases for  $V$  and let  $[T]_\beta$  and  $[T]_\gamma$  be defined. Using part (e) of Exercise 7, we obtain

$$\det([T]_\beta - \lambda I) = \det(T - \lambda I_V) = \det([T]_\gamma - \lambda I_V). \quad \blacksquare$$

### Exercise 5.1.13

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  over a field  $F$ , let  $\beta$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ , and let  $A = [T]_\beta$ . In reference, to figure 5.1, prove the following.

- (a) If  $v \in V$  and  $\phi_\beta(v)$  is an eigenvector of  $A$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , then  $v$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $v \in V$  and  $\phi_\beta(v)$  is an eigenvector of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . By the linearity of  $\phi_\beta$ , we have that

$$L_A \phi_\beta(v) = \lambda \phi_\beta(v) = \phi_\beta(\lambda v).$$

Since  $L_A \phi_\beta = \phi_\beta T$  (by Figure 5.1) and  $\phi_\beta$  is an injective map, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L_A \phi_\beta(v) &= \phi_\beta T(v) \\ \lambda \phi_\beta(v) &= \phi_\beta T(v) \\ \phi_\beta(\lambda v) &= \phi_\beta(T(v)) \end{aligned}$$

which implies that  $T(v) = \lambda v$  where  $v \neq 0$ . Hence,  $v$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . ■

- (b) If  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$  (and hence of  $T$ ), then a vector  $y \in F^n$  is an eigenvector of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$  if and only if  $\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $y \in F^n$  is an eigenvector of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . By definition, we have

$$L_A(y) = \lambda y. \quad (1)$$

Since  $\phi_\beta$  is a surjective mapping, we know that  $y = \phi_\beta(x)$  for some  $x \in F^n$ . This tells us that  $x$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$  by part (a). Since  $\phi_\beta$  is also invertible, we have that  $x = \phi_\beta^{-1}(y)$  implies

$$T(\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)) = \lambda \phi_\beta^{-1}(y).$$

Thus,  $\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)$  is the eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ .

Conversely, if  $\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ , then we have

$$T(\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)) = \lambda \phi_\beta^{-1}(y).$$

Using the linearity of  $\phi_\beta^{-1}$ , we obtain

$$T(\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)) = \phi_\beta^{-1}(\lambda y). \quad (2)$$

Now, applying  $\phi_\beta$  on both sides of (2), we obtain

$$\phi_\beta T(\phi_\beta^{-1}(y)) = \lambda y. \quad (3)$$

Since  $L_A \phi_\beta = \phi_\beta T$ , we get that

$$L_A(\phi_\beta \phi_\beta^{-1}(y)) = \lambda y \Leftrightarrow L_A(y) = \lambda y$$

with  $y \in F^n$ . Thus, we have that  $y$  is an eigenvector of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . ■

#### Exercise 5.1.14

For any square matrix  $A$ , prove that  $A$  and  $A^t$  have the same characteristic polynomial (and hence the same eigenvalues).

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an arbitrary square matrix. Let  $f(t) = \det(A - \lambda I)$  and  $g(t) = \det(A^t - \lambda I)$ . Using the properties of the transpose, observe that

$$(A - \lambda I)^t = A^t - (\lambda I)^t = A^t - \lambda I.$$

By Theorem 4.8, we obtain that  $\det(A - \lambda I) = \det(A - \lambda I)^t = \det(A^t - \lambda I)$ . Thus, we have  $g(t) = f(t)$  and we are done. ■

#### Exercise 5.1.15

- (a) Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a vector space  $V$ , and let  $x$  be an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . For any positive integer  $m$ , prove that  $x$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^m$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda^m$ .

**Proof.** We proceed via induction on  $m$ . Let  $m = 1$ . Then  $x$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$  which implies  $T(x) = \lambda x$ . Now, assume this result holds for  $m - 1$  case. We will show that  $m$ th case. By induction hypothesis, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} T^m(x) &= T^{(m-1)+1}(x) = T^{m-1}T(x) \\ &= T^{m-1}(T(x)) \\ &= \lambda^{m-1}T(x) \\ &= \lambda^{m-1}\lambda x \\ &= \lambda^m x. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $T^m(x) = \lambda^m x$  which ends our induction argument. ■

- (b) State and prove the analogous result for matrices.

---

**Proof.** The analogous result for matrices is

For any positive integer  $m$ , prove that  $x$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda^m$ .

This can be proven by applying part (a) to  $L_A$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.16

- (a) Prove that similar matrices have the same trace.

**Proof.** See Exercise 2.5.10. ■

- (b) How would you define the trace of a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space? Justify that your definition is well-defined.

**Proof.** I would define the trace of a linear operator by the following notation:

$$\operatorname{tr}(T) = \operatorname{tr}([T]_{\beta}).$$

Since  $V$  is a finite-dimensional vector space, let  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  be two ordered bases such that  $[T]_{\beta}$  and  $[T]_{\gamma}$  are defined. Observe that

$$\operatorname{tr}([T]_{\beta}) = \operatorname{tr}(T) = \operatorname{tr}([T]_{\gamma}).$$

■

### Exercise 5.1.17

Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  defined by  $T(A) = A^t$ .

- (a) Show that  $\pm 1$  are the only eigenvalues of  $T$ .

**Proof.** ■

- (b) Describe the eigenvectors corresponding to each eigenvalue of  $T$ .

**Solution.** ■

- (c) Find an ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $[T]_{\beta}$  is a diagonal matrix.

**Solution.** ■

- (d) Find an ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $[T]_{\beta}$  is a diagonal matrix.

**Solution.** ■

### Exercise 5.1.19

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be similar  $n \times n$  matrices. Prove that there exists an  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$ , a linear operator  $T$  on  $V$ , and ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  for  $V$  such that  $A = [T]_{\beta}$  and  $B = [T]_{\gamma}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Since  $A$  and  $B$  are similar matrices, there exists an invertible

$n \times n$  matrix  $Q$  such that

$$A = Q^{-1}BQ.$$

By Exercise 2.5.14, there exists an  $n$  dimensional vector space  $V$ , ordered bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  for  $V$ , and a linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  such that

$$A = [T]_{\beta} \text{ and } B = [T]_{\gamma}.$$

■

### Exercise 5.1.20

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix with characteristic polynomial

$$f(t) = (-1)^n t^n + a_{n-1} t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 t + a_0.$$

Prove that  $f(0) = a_0 = \det(A)$ . Deduce that  $A$  is invertible if and only if  $a_0 \neq 0$ .

**Proof.** The characteristic polynomial of  $A$  is just

$$f(t) = \det(A - tI) = (-1)^n t^n + a_{n-1} t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 t + a_0.$$

Letting  $t = 0$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f(0) &= \det(A - 0 \cdot I) = \det(A) \\ &= (-1)^n (0)^n + a_{n-1} (0)^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 (0) + a_0 \\ &= a_0. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose that  $A$  is an invertible matrix. Using the corollary to Theorem 4.7, we know that this is true if and only if  $\det(A) \neq 0$ . So,  $\det(A) = a_0 \neq 0$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.21

Let  $A$  and  $f(t)$  be as in Exercise 20.

- (a) Prove that  $f(t) = (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) \cdots (A_{nn} - t) + q(t)$  where  $q(t)$  is a polynomial of degree at most  $n - 2$ .

**Proof.** We proceed via induction on  $n \geq 2$ . If  $n = 2$ , then we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= \det(A - tI) = \det \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} - t & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} - t \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) - A_{12}A_{21} \end{aligned}$$

where  $q(t) = A_{21}A_{12}$  is a polynomial of degree 0.

Assume the result holds for polynomials with degree less than  $n$ . Note that  $(A_{nn} - t)$  divides  $f(t)$  is true if and only if  $f(A_{nn}) = 0$  by Corollary to the Division Algorithm for polynomials. Thus, there exists a polynomial  $g(t)$  such that  $f(t) = (A_{nn} - t)g(t)$ . Since  $g(t)$  is a polynomial with degree less than  $n$ , we have

$$g(t) = (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) \cdots (A_{n-1, n-1} - t) + \phi(t)$$

with  $\phi(t)$  with degree  $n - 1$  by the induction hypothesis. Thus, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= (A_{nn} - t)g(t) = (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) \cdots (A_{nn} - t) + (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t) \\ &= (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) \cdots (A_{nn} - t) + q(t) \end{aligned}$$

with  $q(t) = (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t)$  having a degree less than  $n - 2$ . This ends our induction argument. ■

(b) Show that  $\text{tr}(A) = (-1)^{n-1}a_{n-1}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be defined as in Exercise 20. If  $n = 2$ , then part (a) implies that

$$f(t) = \det(A - tI) = t^2 - (A_{11} + A_{22})t - (A_{11}A_{22} + A_{12}A_{21})$$

where  $\text{tr}(A) = A_{11} + A_{22}$ . Then equating coefficients with the way  $f(t)$  is defined in Exercise 20, we obtain that  $\text{tr}(A) = (-1)^{2-1}a_1$ . A similar process is done when  $n = 3$  where we get  $\text{tr}(A) = (-1)^{3-1}a_2$ . If we continue this pattern then we will find that  $\text{tr}(A) = (-1)^{n-1}a_{n-1}$ .

We can show this via an induction argument. We claim that  $f(t)$  can be expanded into

$$f(t) = (-1)^n t^n + (-1)^{n-1} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-1} + \phi(t)$$

where  $\phi(t)$  is a polynomial of degree less than  $n$ . Suppose the argument above holds for  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  matrices. If  $(A_{nn} - t)$  divides  $f(t)$ , we get that  $f(t) = (A_{nn} - t)g(t)$  where  $g(t)$  is some polynomial of degree  $n - 1$ . Using our induction hypothesis,  $g(t)$  can be expanded into

$$g(t) = (-1)^{n-1} t^{n-1} + (-1)^{n-2} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-2} + \phi(t).$$

Distributing through by  $(A_{nn} - t)$ , we get that

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= (A_{nn} - t)[(-1)^{n-1} t^{n-1} + (-1)^{n-2} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-2} + \phi(t)] \\ &= (A_{nn} - t)(-1)^{n-1} t^{n-1} + (-1)^{n-2} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-2} (A_{nn} - t) + (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t) \\ &= (-1)^n t^n + (\text{tr}(A) + A_{nn})(-1)^{n-1} t^{n-1} + (-1)^{n-2} A_{nn} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-2} + (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t) \\ &= (-1)^n t^n + (-1)^{n-1} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii} \right) t^{n-1} + (-1)^{n-2} \text{tr}(A) A_{nn} t^{n-2} + (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t) \\ &= (-1)^n t^n + (-1)^{n-1} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii} \right) t^{n-1} + r(t) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$r(t) = (-1)^{n-2} \text{tr}(A) t^{n-2} + (A_{nn} - t)\phi(t)$$

is a polynomial of degree less than  $n$ . Equating coefficients with  $f(t)$ , we get that

$$a_{n-1} = (-1)^{n-1} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii} \right)$$

which implies that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii} = \text{tr}(A) = (-1)^{n-1} a_{n-1}$$

which ends our induction argument. ■

### Exercise 5.1.22

- (a) Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a vector space  $V$  over the field  $F$ , and let  $g(t)$  be a polynomial with coefficients from  $F$ . Prove that if  $x$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  with corresponding eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , then  $g(T)(x) = g(\lambda)(x)$ . That is,  $x$  is an eigenvector of  $g(T)$  with corresponding eigenvalue  $g(\lambda)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $x$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  with corresponding eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . Using part (a) of Exercise 5.1.15, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} g(T)(x) &= (a_n T^n + a_{n-1} T^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 T + a_0 I)(x) \\ &= a_n T^n(x) + a_{n-1} T^{n-1}(x) + \cdots + a_1 T(x) + a_0 I(x) \\ &= a_n \lambda^n(x) + a_{n-1} \lambda^{n-1}(x) + \cdots + a_1 \lambda x + a_0 x \\ &= (a_n \lambda^n + a_{n-1} \lambda^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 \lambda + a_0)(x) \\ &= g(\lambda)(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $g(T)(x) = g(\lambda)(x)$ . ■

- (b) State and prove a comparable result for matrices.

**Proof.** Replace  $T$  with  $L_A$  and apply part (a). ■

- (c) Verify (b) for the matrix  $A$  in Exercise 4(a) with polynomial  $g(t) = 2t^2 - t + 1$ , eigenvector  $x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ , and corresponding eigenvalue  $\lambda = 4$ .

**Solution.** Let  $\lambda = 4$ ,

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

First, we will compute  $g(\lambda)(x)$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} g(4)(x) &= (2(4)^2 - 4 + 1)(x) \\ &= 29 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 58 \\ 87 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, we will compute  $g(L_A)(x)$ . Observe that  $A^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 32 \\ 48 \end{pmatrix}$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} g(L_A)(x) &= (2L_A^2 - L_A + 1I)(x) \\ &= 2A^2(x) - A(x) - I(x) \\ &= 2 \begin{pmatrix} 32 \\ 48 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 56 \\ 84 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 58 \\ 87 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$



Thus, we get that  $g(A)(x) = g(\lambda)(x)$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.23

Use Exercise 22 to prove that if  $f(t)$  is the characteristic polynomial of a diagonalizable linear operator  $T$ , then  $f(T) = T_0$ , the zero operator.

**Proof.** Since the linear operator  $T$  is diagonalizable, there exists an ordered basis  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  for  $V$  consisting of eigenvectors  $v_j$  of  $T$  corresponding to eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$ . Denote the characteristic polynomial  $f(t)$  of a diagonalizable linear operator  $T$  by

$$f(t) = \det([T]_{\beta} - tI_n).$$

Observe that for every  $\lambda_j$ , we have  $f(\lambda_j) = 0$  by Theorem 5.2. Thus, using Exercise 22 we obtain the following:

$$f(T)(v_j) = f(\lambda_j)(v_j) = T_0(v_j).$$

Therefore, we have  $f(T) = T_0$ . ■

### Exercise 5.1.24

Use Exercise 21 (a) to prove Theorem 5.3

**Proof.** Let  $f(t)$  be the characteristic polynomial of  $A$  and let  $A$  be defined as in Exercises 20 and 21. Observe that exercise 20 and exercise 21 part (a) proves part (a) of Theorem 5.3. Since the characteristic polynomial of  $A$  is of degree  $n$ , its characteristic polynomial contains at most  $n$  distinct zeros by Corollary 1 to the Division Algorithm for Polynomials. But this can only happen if and only if  $t$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$ . Thus,  $A$  must have  $n$  distinct eigenvalues. This proves part (b). ■

## 5.2 Diagonalization

### Exercise 5.2.5

State and prove the matrix version of Theorem 5.6.

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and let  $f(t) = \det(A - tI)$  is the characteristic polynomial of  $A$ . Suppose  $L_A$  is diagonalizable. The proof is the same except  $T$  is replaced with  $L_A$  instead. Thus, the characteristic polynomial  $f(t)$  of  $A$  splits over  $F$ . ■

### Exercise 5.2.8

Suppose that  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  has two distinct eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  and that  $\dim(E_{\lambda_1}) = n - 1$ . Prove that  $A$  is diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  be two distinct eigenvalues where  $E_{\lambda_1}$  and  $E_{\lambda_2}$  are the eigenspaces associated with these eigenvalues (related to the linear operator  $L_A$ ). Let  $\beta_1$  be a basis for  $E_{\lambda_1}$ . Since  $\dim(E_{\lambda_1}) = n - 1$ , we have

$$\beta_1 = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{n-1}\}.$$

Note that the dimensions of  $E_{\lambda_1}$  and  $E_{\lambda_2}$  must sum to  $n$ . Thus, we must have  $\dim(E_{\lambda_2}) = 1$

and let  $\beta_2 = \{v'\}$  be the basis for  $E_{\lambda_2}$  where  $v' \neq 0$ . So, extend  $\beta_1$  to a basis  $\beta$  for  $V$  taking the union of  $\beta_2$  with this basis. Since  $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  is a set that contains exactly  $n$  linearly independent vectors that are eigenvectors of  $L_A$  corresponding to eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ , we have that  $L_A$  must be diagonalizable by part (b) of Theorem 5.9. Thus,  $A$  must be diagonalizable. ■

### Exercise 5.2.9

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , and suppose there exists an ordered basis for  $V$  such that  $[T]_\beta$  is an upper triangular matrix.

- (a) Prove that the characteristic polynomial for  $T$  splits.

**Proof.** Let

$$f(t) = \det([T]_\beta - tI)$$

be the characteristic polynomial of  $[T]_\beta$ . By Exercise 23 of Section 4.2, we can see that the determinant of this upper triangular matrix is just the product of its diagonal entries. Thus, we have

$$f(t) = (-1)^n ([T]_{\beta_{11}} - t)([T]_{\beta_{22}} - t) \cdots ([T]_{\beta_{nn}} - t).$$

Hence,  $f(t)$  splits. ■

- (b) State and prove an analogous result for matrices.

**Proof.** Substitute  $L_A$  in place of  $T$  and apply part (a). ■

### Exercise 5.2.10

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  with the distinct eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  and corresponding multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$ . Suppose that  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$  such that  $[T]_\beta$  is an upper triangular matrix. Prove that the diagonal entries of  $[T]_\beta$  are  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  and that each  $\lambda_i$  occurs  $m_i$  times ( $1 \leq i \leq k$ ).

**Proof.** Let  $[T]_\beta = A$  and  $\dim(V) = n$ . Since  $A$  is an upper triangular matrix, we know that the characteristic polynomial of  $A$  splits by Exercise 5.2.10. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= \det(A - tI) \\ &= (-1)^n (A_{11} - t)(A_{22} - t) \cdots (A_{nn} - t). \end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 5.3,  $f(t)$  contains at most  $n$  distinct eigenvalues. So, we must have  $f(t) = 0$  if and only if  $\lambda = A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots, A_{nn}$ . But this means that each  $A_{ii}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$  by Theorem 5.2. Thus, the eigenvalues of  $T$  must occur on the diagonals of  $A$ . But we only have distinct eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  of  $T$  with corresponding multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$  where  $k \leq n$ . So, each  $m_i$  corresponding to each  $\lambda_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  must sum up to  $n$  since  $f(t)$  is an  $n$ th degree polynomial and there must be  $n$  solutions to  $f(t) = 0$ . Thus, each  $\lambda_i$  must occur  $m_i$  times along the diagonal of  $A$ . ■

### Exercise 5.2.11

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix that is similar to an upper triangular matrix and has the distinct eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  with corresponding multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$ . Prove the following statements.

- (a)  $\text{tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^k m_i \lambda_i$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Suppose  $A$  is similar to some upper triangular matrix  $B$ . Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the eigenvalues with corresponding multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$  of  $B$ . Since these eigenvalues must occur on the diagonal of  $A$  (by Exercise 5.2.10) where each  $\lambda_i$  occurs  $m_i$  times along with  $\text{tr}(A) = \text{tr}(B)$  (since  $A$  is similar to  $B$ ), we can take the sum of our diagonal entries to get

$$\text{tr}(A) = \text{tr}(B) = \sum_{i=1}^k m_i \lambda_i.$$

■

- (b)  $\det(A) = (\lambda_1)^{m_1} (\lambda_2)^{m_2} \dots (\lambda_k)^{m_k}$ .

**Proof.** Since  $A$  is similar to  $B$ , we know that  $\det(A) = \det(B)$  by Exercise 2.5.10. Since  $B$  is upper triangular, we know that by Exercise 4.2.23 that the determinant of  $B$  is just the product of its diagonal entries. Since the diagonal entries of  $B$  consists of eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  corresponding to multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$ , we have

$$\det(A) = \det(B) = \prod_{i=1}^k (\lambda_i)^{m_i}$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 5.2.12

Let  $T$  be an invertible linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ .

- (a) Recall that for any eigenvalue of  $T$ ,  $\lambda^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^{-1}$  (Exercise 8 of Section 5.1). Prove that the eigenspace of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$  is the same as the eigenspace of  $T^{-1}$  corresponding to  $\lambda^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\lambda$  be an eigenvalue of  $T$ . Denote the eigenspaces  $E_\lambda$  and  $E_{\lambda^{-1}}$  of  $T$  and  $T^{-1}$  respectively. We need to show that  $E_\lambda = E_{\lambda^{-1}}$ . Note that  $E_\lambda = N(T - \lambda I)$  by definition. Let  $x \in E_\lambda$ . Then this is true if and only if  $x \neq 0$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$  by Theorem 5.4. By Exercise 5.1.8, this is true if and only if  $x$  is an eigenvector of  $T^{-1}$  corresponding to  $\lambda^{-1}$ . By Theorem 5.4 again, this is true if and only if  $x \in N(T^{-1} - \lambda^{-1}I)$ . So,  $x \in E_{\lambda^{-1}}$  and thus  $E_\lambda \subseteq E_{\lambda^{-1}}$ . We can reverse this argument to get the other containment. Thus,  $E_{\lambda^{-1}} \subseteq E_\lambda$  and so we conclude that  $E_\lambda = E_{\lambda^{-1}}$ . ■

- (b) Prove that if  $T$  is diagonalizable, then  $T^{-1}$  is diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the eigenvalues of  $T$  corresponding to multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k$ . Suppose that  $T$  is diagonalizable. By Theorem 5.9, the multiplicity of each  $\lambda_i$  is equal to  $\dim(E_{\lambda_i})$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Using part (a), we obtain

$$m_i = \dim(E_{\lambda_i}) = \dim(E_{\lambda_i^{-1}}) \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq k.$$

Since each  $\lambda_i^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^{-1}$  and  $\dim(E_{\lambda_i^{-1}}) = m_i$ ,  $T^{-1}$  must be diagonalizable by part (a) of Theorem 5.9. ■

### Exercise 5.2.13

Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ . Recall from Exercise 14 of Section 5.1 that  $A$  and  $A^t$  have the same characteristic polynomial and hence share the same eigenvalues with the same multiplicities. For any eigenvalue  $\lambda$  of  $A$  and  $A^t$ , let  $E_\lambda$  and  $E'_\lambda$  denote the corresponding eigenspaces for  $A$  and  $A^t$ , respectively.

- (a) Show by way of example that for a given common eigenvalue, these two eigenspaces need not be the same.

**Solution.** ■

- (b) Prove that for any eigenvalue  $\lambda$ ,  $\dim(E_\lambda) = \dim(E'_\lambda)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and denote  $E_\lambda = N(L_A - \lambda I)$ . Let  $x \in E_\lambda$ . By Theorem 5.9,  $x \neq 0$  is an eigenvector of  $L_A$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . So,  $\lambda$  must be an eigenvalue of  $A$  by definition. By Theorem 5.2, we must have  $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$ . By Exercise 5.1.14, we have

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = \det(A^t - \lambda I) = 0.$$

Thus,  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $A^t$  by Theorem 5.2 and so  $\lambda$  is corresponding to the eigenvector  $x$  of  $L_{A^t}$ . By Theorem 5.4 again, we can see that  $x \in E'_\lambda$ . Thus,  $E_\lambda \subseteq E'_\lambda$ . We can reverse this argument to show the other containment. Thus,  $E'_\lambda \subseteq E_\lambda$  and so we conclude that  $E_\lambda = E'_\lambda$ . ■

- (c) Prove that if  $A$  is diagonalizable, then  $A^t$  is diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Apply the same argument in part (b) of Exercise 5.2.12 and part (a) of this exercise to show that  $A^t$  is diagonalizable. ■

**Definition 5.2.1 (Simultaneously Diagonalizable).** Two linear operators  $T$  and  $U$  on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  are called **simultaneously diagonalizable** if there exists an ordered basis  $\beta$  for  $V$  such that both  $[T]_\beta$  and  $[U]_\beta$  are diagonal matrices. Similarly,  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  are called **simultaneously diagonalizable** if there exists an invertible matrix  $Q \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  such that both  $Q^{-1}AQ$  and  $Q^{-1}BQ$  are diagonal matrices.

### Exercise 5.2.17

- (a) Prove that if  $T$  and  $U$  are simultaneously diagonalizable linear operators on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , then the matrices  $[T]_\beta$  and  $[U]_\beta$  are simultaneously diagonalizable for any ordered basis  $\beta$ .

**Proof.** Let  $T, U$  be simultaneously diagonalizable linear operators. Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional let  $\beta'$  be another ordered basis for  $V$  (that is distinct from  $\beta$ ). Using Theorem 2.23, we have

$$[T]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q$$

where  $Q^{-1}, Q$  are invertible and diagonal where

$$Q = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta \text{ and } Q^{-1} = [I_V]_\beta^{\beta'}.$$

Since  $[T]_\beta$  is diagonal,  $[T]_{\beta'}$  is diagonal as well. We can apply this same argument to  $U$  to show that  $Q^{-1}[U]_\beta Q$  for some invertible matrix  $Q$ . ■

- (b) Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are simultaneously diagonalizable matrices, then  $L_A$  and  $L_B$  are simultaneously diagonalizable linear operators.

**Proof.** Let  $T = L_A$  and  $U = L_B$ . Apply part (a) to show that  $L_A$  and  $L_B$  are also simultaneously diagonalizable linear operators. ■

### Exercise 5.2.18

- (a) Prove that if  $T$  and  $U$  are simultaneously diagonalizable operators, then  $T$  and  $U$  commute (i.e.,  $TU = UT$ ).

**Proof.** Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be a basis for a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ . First, we need to ensure that given  $T$  and  $U$  are simultaneously diagonalizable that both  $TU$  and  $UT$  are simultaneously diagonalizable as well; that is,  $[TU]_\beta$  and  $[UT]_\beta$  are diagonal matrices. Since  $T$  and  $U$  are simultaneous diagonalizable, there exists a invertible matrix  $Q$  such that

$$Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q \text{ and } Q^{-1}[U]_\beta Q$$

are diagonal matrices. Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional, let  $\beta'$  be a basis such that  $[T]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q$  and  $[U]_{\beta'} = Q^{-1}[U]_\beta Q$ . Using Theorem 2.11, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [TU]_\beta &= [T]_\beta [U]_\beta \\ &= (Q[T]_{\beta'} Q^{-1})(Q[U]_{\beta'} Q^{-1}) \\ &= Q[T]_{\beta'} [U]_{\beta'} Q^{-1} \\ &= Q[TU]_{\beta'} Q^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

But this implies that  $TU$  is simultaneously diagonalizable. A similar argument shows  $UT$  being simultaneously diagonalizable. Hence,  $[TU]_\beta$  and  $[U]_\beta$  are diagonal matrices. Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  and  $\lambda'_1, \lambda'_2, \dots, \lambda'_n$  be the eigenvalues of  $T$  and  $U$  respectively. Thus, for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} (TU)(v_j) &= \sum_{i=1}^n D_{ij} v_j = D_{jj} = (\lambda_j \lambda'_j) v_j = (\lambda'_j \lambda_j) v_j = C_{jj} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n C_{ij} v_j = (UT)(v_j). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $TU$  and  $UT$  commute. ■

- (b) Show that if  $A$  and  $B$  are simultaneously diagonalizable matrices, then  $A$  and  $B$  commute.

**Proof.** Let  $T = L_A$  and  $U = L_B$ , then apply part (a). ■

### Exercise 5.2.19

Let  $T$  be a diagonalizable linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space, and let  $m$  be any positive integer. Prove that  $T$  and  $T^m$  are simultaneously diagonalizable.

**Proof.** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space. Let  $\beta$  and  $\beta'$  be two ordered bases for  $V$ . We need to show that  $[T]_\beta$  and  $[T^m]_\beta$  are diagonal matrices. The former is shown via part (a) of Exercise 5.2.17. We will induct on  $m$ . The base case is taken care of. Let's assume that the result holds for  $m - 1$  case. That is, there exists an invertible matrix  $Q$  such that  $Q^{-1}[T^{m-1}]_\beta Q = [T]_{\beta'}$ . Similarly, we have  $Q^{-1}[T]_\beta Q = [T]_{\beta'}$ . We will show that the result holds for the  $m$ th case. By the induction hypothesis and Theorem 2.11, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} [T^m]_\beta &= [T^{(m-1)+1}]_\beta = [T^{m-1}T]_\beta = [T^{m-1}]_\beta [T]_\beta \\ &= (Q[T^{m-1}]_{\beta'} Q^{-1})(Q[T]_{\beta'} Q^{-1}) = Q[T^m]_{\beta'} Q^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $Q^{-1}[T^m]_\beta Q = [T^m]_{\beta'}$ . Notice how  $T^{m-1}$  and  $T$  commute via part (a) of Exercise 5.2.18. Thus, we get that both  $T$  and  $T^m$  are simultaneously diagonalizable linear operators. ■

### Exercise 5.2.20

Let  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  be subspaces of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k W_i = V.$$

Prove that  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  if and only if

$$\dim(V) = \sum_{i=1}^k \dim(W_i).$$

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, suppose  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$ . By definition, we have

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^n W_i$$

and

$$W_j \cap \sum_{i \neq j} W_i = \{0\}$$

for some  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Using repeated applications of part (a) of Exercise 1.6.29, we get that

$$\dim(V) = \dim\left(\sum_{i=1}^n W_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \dim(W_i) + \dim\left(W_j \cap \sum_{i \neq j} W_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \dim(W_i).$$

Thus, we get that

$$\dim(V) = \sum_{i=1}^n \dim(W_i).$$

Conversely, each  $W_i$  is finite-dimensional, there exists a basis  $\beta_i$  for each  $W_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Thus, we have  $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \dots \cup \beta_k$  is a basis for  $V$  which implies that

$$\bigoplus_{i=1}^k W_i = V$$

by part (e) of Theorem 5.9. ■

**Definition 5.2.2 (Partitions).** We call the sets  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_k$  a partition of  $\beta$  if  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_k$  are subsets of  $\beta$  such that

$$\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \dots \cup \beta_k \text{ and } \beta_i \cap \beta_j = \emptyset \text{ if } i \neq j.$$

### Exercise 5.2.21

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space with a basis  $\beta$ , and let  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_k$  be a **partition** of  $\beta$ . Prove that

$$V = \text{span}(\beta_1) \oplus \text{span}(\beta_2) \oplus \dots \oplus \text{span}(\beta_k).$$

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  be a basis for  $V$  and let  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_k$  be a partition of  $\beta$ . By definition,  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_k$  are subsets of  $\beta$  such that

$$\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2 \cup \dots \cup \beta_k \text{ and } \beta_i \cap \beta_j = \emptyset \text{ if } i \neq j.$$

Since  $\beta$  is a basis, we must have  $\text{span}(\beta) = V$ . By repeated applications of Exercise 1.4.14, we must have

$$V = \text{span}(\beta) = \text{span}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^k \beta_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^k \text{span}(\beta_i).$$

Thus, we establish that

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^k \text{span}(\beta_i).$$

Now suppose for sake of contradiction that there exists a  $1 \leq j \leq k$  such that

$$v \in \text{span}(\beta_j) \cap \sum_{i \neq j} \text{span}(\beta_i).$$

But this implies that  $\beta_j \cap \beta_i \neq \emptyset$  which is a contradiction. Thus, we must have that

$$\text{span}(\beta_j) \cap \sum_{i=1}^k \text{span}(\beta_i) = \{0\}.$$

Hence, we must have

$$V = \bigoplus_{i=1}^k \text{span}(\beta_i).$$

### Exercise 5.2.22

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , and suppose that the distinct eigenvalues of  $T$  are  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Prove that

$$\text{span}(\{x \in V : x \text{ is an eigenvector of } T\}) = E_{\lambda_1} \oplus E_{\lambda_2} \oplus \dots \oplus E_{\lambda_k}.$$

**Proof.** Let  $S = \{x \in V : x \text{ is an eigenvector of } T\}$ . Our goal is to show that

$$\text{span}(S) = \sum_{i=1}^k E_{\lambda_i} \quad \text{and} \quad E_{\lambda_j} \cap \sum_{i \neq j} E_{\lambda_i} = \{0\}.$$

Since  $V$  is finite-dimensional and each  $E_{\lambda_i}$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we have that each  $E_{\lambda_i}$  is finite-dimensional by Theorem 1.11. Thus, there exists a basis of eigenvectors  $\gamma_i$  of  $T$  for each  $E_{\lambda_i}$ . Using repeated applications of Exercise 14 of section 1.4, we must have

$$\sum_{i=1}^k E_{\lambda_i} = \sum_{i=1}^k \text{span}(\gamma_i) = \text{span}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^k \gamma_i\right).$$

Observe that each  $\gamma_i$  is a linearly independent set containing eigenvectors of  $T$ . Thus, we can see that

$$\bigcup_{i=1}^k \gamma_i = S$$

and so, we must have

$$\sum_{i=1}^k E_{\lambda_i} = \text{span}(S).$$

Since each eigenspace  $E_{\lambda_i}$  is distinct, we have for all  $i \neq j$  that

$$E_{\lambda_j} \cap \sum_{i \neq j} E_{\lambda_i} = \{0\}.$$

Thus, we conclude that

$$\text{span}(S) = \bigoplus_{i=1}^k E_{\lambda_i}.$$

■



## Chapter 6

# Inner Product Spaces

### 6.1 Inner Products and Norms

#### Exercise 6.1.6

Complete the proof of Theorem 6.1.

**Proof.** (b) Let  $x, y \in V$ . Using the linearity of the first component, we must have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, cy \rangle &= \overline{\langle cy, x \rangle} \\ &= \overline{c \langle y, x \rangle} \\ &= \bar{c} \overline{\langle y, x \rangle} \\ &= \bar{c} \langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

(c) Let  $x \in V$ . Note that for any  $v \in V$ , we have  $0 \cdot v = 0$ . So, we have

$$\langle x, 0 \rangle = \langle x, 0 \cdot v \rangle = \bar{0} \langle x, v \rangle = 0 \langle x, v \rangle = 0$$

Likewise, we have

$$\langle 0, x \rangle = \langle 0 \cdot v, x \rangle = 0 \langle v, x \rangle = 0.$$

Thus, we have  $\langle x, 0 \rangle = \langle 0, x \rangle = 0$ .

(d) Suppose  $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$ . By part (c), we can see that

$$\langle x, x \rangle = \langle 0, x \rangle = \langle x, 0 \rangle = 0$$

which is true if and only if  $x = 0$ . The converse is trivial.

(e) Suppose  $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle$  for all  $x \in V$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle &\Rightarrow \langle x, y \rangle - \langle x, z \rangle = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \langle 0, y - z \rangle = 0.\end{aligned}$$

By part (c), we know that the above is true if and only if  $y - z = 0$ . So, we have  $y = z$ . ■

#### Exercise 6.1.7

Complete the proof of Theorem 6.2.

**Proof.** (a) Let  $x \in V$  and  $c \in F$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\|cx\| &= \sqrt{\langle cx, cx \rangle} = \sqrt{c\langle x, cx \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{c\bar{c}\langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{|c|^2 \cdot \langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= |c| \cdot \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= |c| \cdot \|x\|.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $\|cx\| = |c| \cdot \|x\|$ .

(b) Let  $x \in V$ . Suppose  $\|x\| = 0$ . Then by definition of norm, we have

$$\|x\| = \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} = 0.$$

Squaring both sides, we can see that

$$\|x\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle = 0.$$

This is true if and only if  $x = 0$  by part (d) of Theorem 6.1. Conversely, suppose  $x = 0$ . So by definition of norm and part (d) of Theorem 6.1, we have

$$\sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \|x\| = 0.$$

■

### Exercise 6.1.9

Let  $\beta$  be a basis for a finite-dimensional inner product space.

(a) Prove that if  $\langle x, z \rangle = 0$  for all  $z \in \beta$ , then  $x = 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $z \in \beta$  where  $z \neq 0$ . By part (c) of the definition of inner product,  $\langle x, z \rangle = 0$  if and only if  $x = 0$ . ■

(b) Prove that if  $\langle x, z \rangle = \langle y, z \rangle$  for all  $z \in \beta$ , then  $x = y$ .

**Proof.** Let  $z \in \beta$ . Observe that

$$\langle x, z \rangle = \langle y, z \rangle \Leftrightarrow \langle x - y, z \rangle = 0.$$

By part (a), we find that  $x - y = 0$  if and only if  $x = y$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.10

Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and suppose that  $x$  and  $y$  are orthogonal vectors in  $V$ . Prove that  $\|x + y\|^2 = \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2$ . Deduce the Pythagorean Theorem in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  be orthogonal. Thus,  $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$  implies that

$$\begin{aligned}\|x + y\|^2 &= \|x\|^2 + \langle y, x \rangle + \langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2 \\ &= \|x\|^2 + \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} + \langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2 \\ &= \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2\end{aligned}$$

which is our desired result. Let  $x' = (x, 0)$  and  $y' = (0, y)$  where  $x', y' \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . Denote  $\|x' + y'\| = z$ . Using the Euclidean definition of length along with our result, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} z^2 &= \|x' + y'\|^2 = \|x'\|^2 + \|y'\|^2 \\ &= |x|^2 + |y|^2 \\ &= x^2 + y^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have obtained the Pythagorean Theorem in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.11

Prove the *parallelogram law* on an inner product space  $V$ ; that is, show that

$$\|x + y\|^2 + \|x - y\|^2 = 2\|x\|^2 + 2\|y\|^2 \quad \text{for all } x, y \in V.$$

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Using the definition of norm and properties of inner product, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} \|x + y\|^2 + \|x - y\|^2 &= \langle x + y, x + y \rangle + \langle x - y, x - y \rangle \\ &= \langle x + y, x \rangle + \langle x + y, y \rangle + \langle x - y, x \rangle + \langle x - y, -y \rangle \\ &= \langle x, x \rangle + \langle y, x \rangle + \langle x, y \rangle + \langle y, y \rangle + \langle x, x \rangle - \langle y, x \rangle \\ &\quad + -\langle x, y \rangle + \langle y, y \rangle \\ &= 2\langle x, x \rangle + 2\langle y, y \rangle \\ &= 2\|x\|^2 + 2\|y\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we obtain

$$\|x + y\|^2 + \|x - y\|^2 = 2\|x\|^2 + 2\|y\|^2. \quad \text{■}$$

### Exercise 6.1.12

Let  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be an orthogonal set in  $V$ , and let  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$  be scalars. Prove that

$$\left\| \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i \right\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k |a_i|^2 \|v_i\|^2.$$

**Proof.** Let  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be an orthogonal set in  $V$  and let  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$  be scalars. By the linearity in the first component and conjugate linearity in the second component, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i \right\|^2 &= \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i, \sum_{j=1}^k a_j v_j \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i \left\langle v_i, \sum_{j=1}^k a_j v_j \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i \left( \sum_{j=1}^k \overline{a_j} \langle v_i, v_j \rangle \right). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  is orthogonal in  $V$ , we have that  $\langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$  where  $\delta_{ij} = 1$  or  $\delta_{ij} = 0$  if  $i = j$  or  $i \neq j$ , respectively. Thus, we have

$$\left\| \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i \right\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i \overline{a_i} \langle v_i, v_i \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^k |a_i|^2 \|v_i\|^2$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.1.13

Suppose that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_1$  and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_2$  is another inner product on  $V$ . Show that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is an inner product on  $V$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_1$  and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_2$  is another inner product on  $V$ . Let  $x, y, z \in V$  and  $c \in F$ .

(a) By linearity of the first component, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x + z, y \rangle &= \langle x + z, y \rangle_1 + \langle x + z, y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle x, y \rangle_1 + \langle z, y \rangle_1 + \langle x, y \rangle_2 + \langle z, y \rangle_2 \\ &= (\langle x, y \rangle_1 + \langle x, y \rangle_2) + (\langle z, y \rangle_1 + \langle z, y \rangle_2) \\ &= \langle x, y \rangle + \langle z, y \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle cx, y \rangle &= \langle cx, y \rangle_1 + \langle cx, y \rangle_2 \\ &= c\langle x, y \rangle_1 + c\langle x, y \rangle_2 \\ &= c(\langle x, y \rangle_1 + \langle x, y \rangle_2) \\ &= c\langle x, y \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

(c)

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} &= \overline{\langle x, y \rangle_1 + \langle x, y \rangle_2} \\ &= \overline{\langle x, y \rangle_1} + \overline{\langle x, y \rangle_2} \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle_1 + \langle y, x \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

(d) For any  $x \neq 0$ , we have

$$\langle x, x \rangle = \langle x, x \rangle_1 + \langle x, x \rangle_2.$$

Note that  $\langle x, x \rangle_1 > 0$  and  $\langle x, x \rangle_2 > 0$ . Thus, we must also have  $\langle x, x \rangle > 0$ .

We conclude that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is a inner product on  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.14

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices, and let  $c$  be a scalar. Prove that  $(A + cB)^* = A^* + \bar{c}B^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices and let  $c \in F$ . By using the definition of adjoint,

we get that for all  $i, j$  we get

$$\begin{aligned}(A + cB)_{ij}^* &= \overline{(A + cB)_{ji}} \\ &= \overline{A_{ji} + cB_{ji}} \\ &= \overline{A_{ji}} + \overline{cB_{ji}} \\ &= (A^*)_{ij} + \bar{c}(B^*)_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that  $(A + cB)^* = A^* + \bar{c}B^*$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.15

- (a) Prove that if  $V$  is an inner product space, then  $|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\|$  if and only if one of the vectors  $x$  or  $y$  is a multiple of the other. *Hint:* If the identity holds and  $y \neq 0$ , let

$$a = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2},$$

and let  $z = x - ay$ . Prove that  $y$  and  $z$  are orthogonal and

$$|a| = \frac{\|x\|}{\|y\|}.$$

Then apply Exercise 10 to  $\|x\|^2 = \|ay + z\|^2$  to obtain  $\|z\| = 0$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $V$  is an inner product space. For the forwards direction, assume  $|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\|$ . We will show that either  $x$  or  $y$  is a multiple of the other. Observe that  $y \neq 0$  implies that

$$|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\| \Leftrightarrow \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|y\|^2} \cdot \|y\| = \|x\|.$$

We can see a similar process proves the other case

$$|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\| \Leftrightarrow \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|x\|^2} \cdot \|x\| = \|y\|.$$

For the backwards direction, suppose either  $x$  or  $y$  is a multiple of the other. Thus, for some  $c \neq 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}|\langle x, y \rangle| &= \sqrt{\langle x, y \rangle \cdot \langle x, y \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{\langle cy, y \rangle \cdot \langle x, \frac{1}{c}x \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{\bar{c} \cdot \frac{1}{c} \cdot \langle y, y \rangle \langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{\langle y, y \rangle \cdot \langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{\langle y, y \rangle} \cdot \sqrt{\langle x, x \rangle} \\ &= \|y\| \cdot \|x\| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\|.\end{aligned}$$

Note that the other case is similar. Thus, we have

$$|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \cdot \|y\|.$$

Now, let  $y \neq 0$  and  $z = x - ay$ . Then set

$$a = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2}.$$

We will show that  $y$  and  $z$  are orthogonal and that

$$|a| = \frac{\|x\|}{\|y\|}.$$

It suffices to show that  $\langle y, z \rangle = 0$ . Observe

$$\begin{aligned} \langle y, z \rangle &= \langle y, x - ay \rangle \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle - \bar{a}\langle y, y \rangle \\ &= \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} - \bar{a}\|y\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Note that we have

$$a = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2} \Leftrightarrow \langle x, y \rangle = a\|y\|^2$$

and

$$\overline{\|y\|^2} = \overline{\langle y, y \rangle} = \langle y, y \rangle.$$

So, we must have that

$$\langle y, z \rangle = \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} - \bar{a}\|y\|^2 = \bar{a}\|y\|^2 - \bar{a}\|y\|^2 = 0.$$

Thus,  $y$  and  $z$  are orthogonal. Using

$$a = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\|y\|^2},$$

we see that

$$\begin{aligned} |\langle x, y \rangle| &= \|x\| \cdot \|y\| \Leftrightarrow \langle x, y \rangle \cdot \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} = \|x\|^2 \cdot \|y\|^2 \\ &\Leftrightarrow |a|^2 \|y\|^4 = \|x\|^2 \cdot \|y\|^2 \\ &\Leftrightarrow |a|^2 = \frac{\|x\|^2}{\|y\|^2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow |a| = \frac{\|x\|}{\|y\|}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, we show that  $\|z\| = 0$  using Exercise 10. Since  $\|x\|^2 = \|ay + z\|^2$ , we see that

$$\|x\|^2 = \|ay + z\|^2 = a^2\|y\|^2 + \|z\|^2.$$

Since  $|a| = \|x\|/\|y\|$ , we can re-write the statement above into

$$a^2\|y\|^2 = a^2\|y\|^2 + \|z\|^2 \Leftrightarrow \|z\|^2 = 0.$$

Thus, we get  $\|z\| = 0$  which is our desired result. ■

- (b) Derive a similar result for the equality  $\|x + y\| = \|x\| + \|y\|$ , and generalize it to the case of  $n$  vectors.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 6.1.16

- (a) Show that the vector space  $H$  with  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  defined on page 332 is an inner product space.

**Proof.** Let  $f, g, h \in H$ . Then

(a)

$$\begin{aligned}\langle f + h, g \rangle &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} (f + h)(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} (f(t) + h(t)) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} (f(t) \overline{g(t)} + h(t) \overline{g(t)}) \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \overline{g(t)} \, dt + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} h(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= \langle f, g \rangle + \langle h, g \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

(b) For  $c \in F$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle cf, g \rangle &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} (cf)(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} cf(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= c \cdot \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt \\ &= c \cdot \langle f, g \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

(c)

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\langle f, g \rangle} &= \overline{\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \overline{f(t) \overline{g(t)}} \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \overline{f(t)} g(t) \, dt & (\overline{\overline{g(t)}} = g(t)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} g(t) \overline{f(t)} \, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \overline{f(t)} g(t) \, dt \\ &= \langle g, f \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

(d) For  $f > 0$ , we know that  $\int_0^{2\pi} f \, dt > 0$  by our integration properties. Thus, we

have

$$\langle f, f \rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \overline{f(t)} dt > 0.$$

We conclude that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  satisfies all properties of an inner product. ■

(b) Let  $V = C([0, 1])$ , and define

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_0^{1/2} f(t)g(t) dt.$$

Is this an inner product on  $V$ ?

**Proof.** This is not an inner product because it fails property (c) of the definition of inner product. ■

### Exercise 6.1.17

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an inner product space  $V$ , and suppose that  $\|T(x)\| = \|x\|$  for all  $x$ . Prove that  $T$  is injective.

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  and suppose  $T(x) = T(y)$ . Taking advantage of the linearity of  $T$ , we can write

$$T(x) = T(y) \Leftrightarrow T(x - y) = 0.$$

Using our assumption, we see that

$$0 = \|T(x - y)\| = \|x - y\|.$$

By using the definition of norm, we can see further that

$$\|x - y\|^2 = 0 \Leftrightarrow \langle x - y, x - y \rangle = 0$$

Since  $V$  is an inner product space, we can see that the above is true if and only if  $x - y = 0$  and thus  $x = y$ . Therefore, we conclude that  $T$  is injective. ■

### Exercise 6.1.18

Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$ , where  $F = \mathbb{R}$  or  $F = \mathbb{C}$ , and let  $W$  be an inner product space over  $F$  with inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ . If  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is linear, prove that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), T(y) \rangle$  defines an inner product on  $V$  if and only if  $T$  is one-to-one.

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . For the forwards direction, suppose that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), T(y) \rangle$  defines an inner product on  $V$ . Suppose that  $T(x) = T(y)$ . Then we see that  $T(x - y) = 0$  since  $T$  is linear. Consider the norm  $\|T(x - y)\| = 0$ . By definition of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$ , observe that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \|T(x - y)\|^2 = \langle T(x - y), T(x - y) \rangle \\ &= \langle x - y, x - y \rangle'. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$  is an inner product, we must have  $x - y = 0$  implies  $x = y$ . For the backwards direction, suppose  $T$  is one-to-one. We need to show that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$  defines an inner product on  $V$ . Let  $x, y, z \in V$  and let  $c \in F$ . Suppose  $T$  is linear and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  defines an inner product over  $W$ . Then



(a)

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x + y, z \rangle' &= \langle T(x + y), T(z) \rangle \\ &= \langle T(x) + T(y), T(z) \rangle \\ &= \langle T(x), T(z) \rangle + \langle T(y), T(z) \rangle \\ &= \langle x, y \rangle' + \langle z, y \rangle' .\end{aligned}$$

(b)

$$\begin{aligned}\langle cx, y \rangle' &= \langle T(cx), T(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle cT(x), T(y) \rangle \\ &= c\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle \\ &= c\langle x, y \rangle' .\end{aligned}$$

(c)

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\langle x, y \rangle'} &= \overline{\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle} \\ &= \langle T(y), T(x) \rangle \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle' .\end{aligned}$$

(d) Suppose  $x \neq 0$ . Since  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is an inner product on  $W$ , we have

$$\langle x, x \rangle' = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle > 0.$$

Thus, we have that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$  is an inner product on  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.19

Let  $V$  be an inner product space. Prove that

- (a)  $\|x \pm y\|^2 = \|x\|^2 \pm 2\Re\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2$  for all  $x, y \in V$ , where  $\Re\langle x, y \rangle$  denotes the real part of the complex number  $\langle x, y \rangle$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  where  $V$  is an inner product space. Note that

$$\|x + y\|^2 = \|x\|^2 + 2\Re\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2$$

by the proof for part (d) of Theorem 6.2. We will show the other case. By the properties found in Theorem 6.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\|x - y\|^2 &= \langle x - y, x - y \rangle \\ &= \langle x, x \rangle - \langle x, y \rangle - (\langle y, x \rangle) \\ &= \langle x, x \rangle - (\langle x, y \rangle + \overline{\langle x, y \rangle}) + \langle y, y \rangle \\ &= \langle x, x \rangle - 2\Re\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2 .\end{aligned}$$
■

- (b)  $|||x| - |y||| \leq \|x - y\|$  for all  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Using part (a) and part (c) of Theorem 6.2, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned}\|x - y\|^2 &= \|x\|^2 - 2\Re\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2 \\ &\geq \|x\|^2 - 2|\langle x, y \rangle| + \|y\|^2 \\ &\geq \|x\|^2 - 2\|x\| \cdot \|y\| + \|y\|^2 & (-2|\langle x, y \rangle| \geq -2\|x\| \cdot \|y\|) \\ &= (\|x\| - \|y\|)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Taking the square root of both sides of our inequality, we obtain

$$\|x - y\| \geq |\|x\| - \|y\||.$$

Note that

$$\sqrt{(\|x\| - \|y\|)^2} = |\|x\| - \|y\||.$$

■

### Exercise 6.1.20

Let  $V$  be an inner product space over  $F$ . Prove the *polar identities*: For all  $x, y \in V$ ,

- (a)  $\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4}\|x + y\|^2 - \frac{1}{4}\|x - y\|^2$  if  $F = \mathbb{R}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  and let  $F = \mathbb{R}$ . Using part (a) of Exercise 19, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{4}\|x + y\|^2 - \frac{1}{4}\|x - y\|^2 &= \frac{1}{4}(\|x\|^2 + 2\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{4}(\|x\|^2 - 2\langle x, y \rangle + \|y\|^2) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot 4\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4}\|x + y\|^2 - \frac{1}{4}\|x - y\|^2.$$

■

- (b)  $\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k=1}^4 i^k \|x + i^k y\|^2$  if  $F = \mathbb{C}$ , where  $i^2 = -1$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  and  $F = \mathbb{C}$ . Using part (a), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{4} \sum_{k=1}^4 i^k \|x + i^k y\|^2 &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ i\|x + iy\|^2 + i^2\|x + i^2 y\|^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + i^3\|x + i^3 y\|^2 + i^4\|x + i^4 y\|^2 \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ i\|x + iy\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2 - i\|x - iy\|^2 + \|x + y\|^2 \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2 \right] + \frac{i}{4} \left[ \|x + iy\|^2 - \|x - iy\|^2 \right]\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\Re\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2 \right] \quad (\text{part(a)})$$

and

$$\Im\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \|x + iy\|^2 - \|x - iy\|^2 \right].$$

Thus, we have that

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k=1}^4 i^k \|x + i^k y\|^2.$$

■

### Exercise 6.1.21

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Define

$$A_1 = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) \quad \text{and} \quad A_2 = \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*).$$

- (a) Prove that  $A_1^* = A_1$ ,  $A_2^* = A_2$ , and  $A = A_1 + iA_2$ . Would it be reasonable to define  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  to be the real and imaginary parts, respectively, of the matrix  $A$ ?

**Proof.** We will first show that  $A_1^* = A_1$  and  $A_2^* = A_2$ . For all  $i, j$ , we see that

$$\begin{aligned} (A_1^*)_{ij} &= \overline{(A_1)_{ji}} = \frac{1}{2} \overline{(A + A^*)_{ji}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \overline{(A_{ji} + A_{ji}^*)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\overline{A_{ji}} + \overline{A_{ji}^*}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} ((A^*)_{ij} + A_{ij}) & (\overline{\overline{A_{ij}}} = A_{ij}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (A^* + A)_{ij} \\ &= (A_1)_{ij}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $A_1^* = A_1$ . Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (A_2^*)_{ij} &= \overline{(A_2)_{ji}} = \frac{1}{2i} \overline{(A - A^*)_{ji}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2i} \overline{(A_{ji} - A_{ji}^*)} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2i} (\overline{A_{ji}} - \overline{A_{ji}^*}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2i} (A_{ij}^* - A_{ij}) & (\overline{\overline{A_{ij}}} = A_{ij}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i} (A_{ij} - A_{ij}^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i} (A - A^*)_{ij} = (A_2)_{ij}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $A_2^* = A_2$ .

Now, we will show that  $A = A_1 + iA_2$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 + iA_2 &= \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) + i \cdot \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}A + \frac{1}{2}A^* + \frac{1}{2}A - \frac{1}{2}A^* \\ &= A. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $A = A_1 + iA_2$ . This is a reasonable definition since we can just define the corresponds parts of the complex entries of  $A$  as entries in  $\mathbb{R}$  corresponding to two

different matrices with each dedicated to the real and imaginary parts, respectively. ■

- (b) Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Prove that the representation in (a) is unique. That is, prove that if  $A = B_1 + iB_2$ , where  $B_1^* = B_1$  and  $B_2^* = B_2$ , then  $B_1 = A_1$  and  $B_2 = A_2$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Suppose there exists another representation of  $A$  such that  $A = B_1 + iB_2$  where  $B_1 = B_1^*$  and  $B_2 = B_2^*$ . Equating this representation to that of the one found in part (a), we obtain that

$$A_1 + iA_2 = B_1 + iB_2 \Leftrightarrow A_1 = A_2, B_1 = B_2.$$

Thus, the representation in (a) is unique. ■

### Exercise 6.1.22

Let  $V$  be a real or complex vector space (possibly infinite-dimensional), and let  $\beta$  be a basis for  $V$ . For  $x, y \in V$  there exists  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in \beta$  such that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i \text{ and } y = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i.$$

Define

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \bar{b}_i.$$

- (a) Prove that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is an inner product on  $V$  and that  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . Thus every real or complex vector space may be regarded as an inner product space.

**Proof.** Let  $\beta$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . We will show that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is an inner product on  $V$ . Let  $x, y, z \in V$  and  $c \in F$ .

- (a) We can find scalars  $a_i, b_i, c_i \in F$  and  $v_i \in \beta$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  such that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i, \quad y = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i v_i, \quad z = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i v_i.$$

Using our definition of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x + y, z \rangle &= \sum_{i=1}^n (a_i + b_i) \bar{c}_i = \sum_{i=1}^n (a_i \bar{c}_i + b_i \bar{c}_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \bar{c}_i + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \bar{c}_i \\ &= \langle x, z \rangle + \langle y, z \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, part (a) is satisfied.

- (b) Using the representation of  $x, y \in V$ , we obtain

$$\langle cx, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n ca_i \bar{b}_i = c \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \bar{b}_i = c \langle x, y \rangle.$$

Thus, part (b) is satisfied.

(c)

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\langle x, y \rangle} &= \overline{\sum_{i=1}^n a_i \overline{b_i}} = \sum_{i=1}^n \overline{a_i \overline{b_i}} = \sum_{i=1}^n \overline{a_i} b_i & (\overline{\overline{b_i}} = b_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \overline{a_i} \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, part (d) is satisfied.

(d) Suppose  $x \neq 0$ . Then by definition of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , we must have

$$\langle x, x \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \overline{a_i} = \sum_{i=1}^n |a_i|^2 > 0.$$

Thus, part (d) is satisfied. ■

(b) Prove that if  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$  or  $V = \mathbb{C}^n$  and  $\beta$  is the standard ordered basis, then the inner product defined above is the standard inner product.

**Proof.** Let  $F = \mathbb{R}^n$  or  $F = \mathbb{C}^n$ . Let  $x, y, z \in F^n$  and  $c \in F$ . Repeat the same process above but with fixing  $x = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ ,  $y = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$ , and  $z = (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ . Thus, the inner product above is the standard inner product. ■

### Exercise 6.1.23

Let  $V = F^n$ , and let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ .

(a) Prove that  $\langle x, Ay \rangle = \langle A^*x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . By definition of the adjoint for matrices, we obtain, for all  $i, j$ , through the linearity of the first component and the conjugate linearity of the second component that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, A_{ij}y \rangle &= \overline{A_{ij}} \langle x, y \rangle = (A^*)_{ji} \langle x, y \rangle \\ &= \langle (A^*)_{ji} x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $\langle x, Ay \rangle = \langle A^*x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ . ■

(b) Suppose that for some  $B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$ , we have  $\langle x, Ay \rangle = \langle Bx, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ . Prove that  $B = A^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . By part (a), we have

$$\langle x, Ay \rangle = \langle A^*x, y \rangle.$$

So, by linearity of the first component, we find that

$$\langle Bx, y \rangle = \langle A^*x, y \rangle \Leftrightarrow B \langle x, y \rangle = A^* \langle x, y \rangle.$$

by assumption. If  $\langle x, y \rangle \neq 0$ , then  $B = A^*$ . Otherwise,  $B$  is just the zero matrix.

Thus, we must have  $B = A^*$ . ■

- (c) Let  $\alpha$  be the standard ordered basis for  $V$ . For any orthonormal basis  $\beta$  for  $V$ , let  $Q$  be the  $n \times n$  matrix whose columns are the vectors in  $\beta$ . Prove that  $Q^* = Q^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V = F^n$  and  $\alpha$  as the standard ordered basis for  $V$ . It suffices to show that  $QQ^* = QQ^* = I$ . Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . Since the columns of  $Q$  are just the vectors of  $\beta$ , we can write

$$\begin{aligned} (QQ^*)_{ij} &= \sum_{k=1}^n Q_{ik} Q_{kj}^* \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n Q_{ik} \overline{Q_{jk}} \\ &= \langle v_i, v_j \rangle \\ &= \delta_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the above is equal to 1 whenever  $i = j$  and 0 otherwise. So, we must have  $QQ^* = I$ . Showing  $Q^*Q = I$  is done similarly as above. Thus, we conclude that  $Q^* = Q^{-1}$ . ■

- (d) Define linear operators  $T$  and  $U$  on  $V$  by  $T(x) = Ax$  and  $U(x) = A^*x$ . Show that  $[U]_\beta = [T]_\beta^*$  for any orthonormal basis  $\beta$  for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $T = L_A$  and  $U = L_{A^*}$  since  $T(x) = Ax$  and  $U(x) = A^*x$ . By Theorem 2.15, we can see that

$$[T]_\beta = A \Leftrightarrow [T]_\beta^* = A^*.$$

But note that  $[U]_\beta = A^*$ . Thus, we conclude that

$$[T]_\beta^* = [U]_\beta.$$
■

**Definition 6.1.1 (Norm Spaces).** Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$ , where  $F$  is either  $\mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ . Regardless of whether  $V$  is or not an inner product space, we may still define a **norm**  $\|\cdot\|$  as a real-valued function on  $V$  satisfying the following three conditions for all  $x, y \in V$  and  $a \in F$ .

- (1)  $\|x\| \geq 0$ , and  $\|x\| = 0$  if and only if  $x = 0$ .
- (2)  $\|ax\| = |a|\|x\|$ .
- (3)  $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$ .

### Exercise 6.1.24

Prove that the following are norms on the given vector spaces  $V$ .

- (a)  $V = M_{m \times n}(F)$ ;  $\|A\| = \max_{i,j} |A_{ij}|$  for all  $A \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ . For (1), let  $A \neq O$  where  $O$  is the zero matrix. Thus,  $|A_{ij}| > 0$  and so  $\|A\| = \max_{i,j} |A_{ij}| > 0$ . On the other hand,  $A = O$  implies that  $A_{ij} = 0$  for all  $i, j$ . This is true if and only if  $\|A\| = 0$ . Hence, (1) is satisfied.

Let  $a \in F$ . By properties of  $\max_{i,j}$

$$\begin{aligned} \|aA\| &= \max_{i,j} |(aA)_{ij}| = \max_{i,j} |aA_{ij}| \\ &= \max_{i,j} |a| |A_{ij}| = |a| \max_{i,j} |A_{ij}| \\ &= |a| \|A\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, part (2) is satisfied.

Now, let  $A, B \in M_{m \times n}(F)$ . Then by triangle inequality of the absolute value, we have for all  $i, j$

$$\begin{aligned} \|A + B\| &= \max_{i,j} |(A + B)_{ij}| \\ &= \max_{i,j} |A_{ij} + B_{ij}| \\ &\leq \max_{i,j} |A_{ij}| + \max_{i,j} |B_{ij}| = \|A\| + \|B\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, (3) is satisfied. We conclude that  $\|A\| = \max_{i,j} |A_{ij}|$  is a norm for all  $A \in V$ . ■

(b)  $V = C([0, 1]); \quad \|f\| = \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t)|$  for all  $f \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V = C([0, 1])$  and let  $f \in V$ . Suppose  $f \neq 0$ , then  $f(t) > 0$  for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ . Thus,  $\|f\| = \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t)| > 0$ . Clearly,  $f = 0$  implies that for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ ,  $f(t) = 0$ .

This is true if and only if  $\|f\| = 0$ .

Let  $a \in F$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \|af\| &= \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |(af)(t)| = \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |af(t)| \\ &= \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |a| |f(t)| \\ &= |a| \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t)| = |a| \|f\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, (2) is satisfied.

Now, let  $f, g \in C([0, 1])$ . By using the properties of the absolute value, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|f + g\| &= \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |(f + g)(t)| = \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t) + g(t)| \\ &\leq \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t)| + \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |g(t)| \\ &= \|f\| + \|g\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $\|f + g\| \leq \|f\| + \|g\|$  for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ . Thus, (3) is satisfied. Hence,  $\|f\| = \max_{t \in [0, 1]} |f(t)|$  is a norm over  $V$ . ■

(c)  $V = C([0, 1]); \quad \|f\| = \int_0^1 |f(t)| dt$  for all  $f \in V$ .

**Proof.** If  $f \geq 0$ , then  $|f| \geq 0$ . Thus,

$$\|f\| = \int_0^1 |f(t)| dt > 0$$

by our integration properties. Otherwise  $f = 0$  implies that

$$\|f\| = \int_0^1 |f(t)| dt = 0.$$

So, property (1) is satisfied. Conversely,  $f = 0$ . Since this is course on linear algebra, I will not bother with the technicalities of the argument. Thus, property (1) is satisfied.

Now, for property (2), let  $f \in C([0, 1])$  and  $a \in F$ . Then by our properties of integration, we must have

$$\begin{aligned} \|af\| &= \int_0^1 |(af)(t)| dt = \int_0^1 |af(t)| dt \\ &= \int_0^1 |a||f(t)| dt \\ &= |a| \int_0^1 |f(t)| dt \\ &= |a|\|f\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, property (2) is satisfied.

Now, let  $f, g \in C([0, 1])$ . Then using the triangle inequality, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \|f + g\| &= \int_0^1 |(f + g)(t)| dt = \int_0^1 |f(t) + g(t)| dt \\ &\leq \int_0^1 |f(t)| + |g(t)| dt \\ &= \int_0^1 f(t) dt + \int_0^1 g(t) dt \\ &= \|f\| + \|g\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|f + g\| \leq \|f\| + \|g\|$  for all  $f, g \in C([0, 1])$  and hence we conclude that

$$\|f\| = \int_0^1 |f(t)| dt$$

defines a norm on  $V = C([0, 1])$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.25

Use Exercise 20 to show that there is no inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  such that  $\|x\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$  if the norm is defined as in Exercise 24(d).

**Proof.** There is no inner product on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  because the first property of the inner product fails. ■



### Exercise 6.1.26

Let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a norm on a vector space  $V$ , and define, for each ordered pair of vectors, the scalar  $d(x, y) = \|x - y\|$ , called the **distance** between  $x$  and  $y$ . Prove the following results for all  $x, y, z \in V$ .

(a)  $d(x, y) \geq 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Then by definition of norm and  $d(x, y)$ , we have

$$d(x, y) = \|x - y\| = \sqrt{\langle x - y, x - y \rangle} \geq 0.$$

■

(b)  $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Then we have

$$d(x, y) = \|x - y\| = \|y - x\| = d(y, x).$$

■

(c)  $d(x, y) \leq d(x, z) + d(z, y)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y, z \in V$ . Then by the triangle inequality of the norm, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d(x, y) &= \|x - y\| = \|x - z + z - y\| \\ &\leq \|x - z\| + \|z - y\| \\ &= d(x, z) + d(z, y). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$d(x, y) \leq d(x, z) + d(z, y).$$

■

(d)  $d(x, x) = 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$ . Then

$$d(x, x) = \|x - x\| = \|0\| = 0.$$

■

(e)  $d(x, y) \neq 0$  if  $x \neq y$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  be distinct ( $x \neq y$ ). Thus,  $x - y \neq 0$  implies that

$$d(x, y) = \|x - y\| = \sqrt{\langle x - y, x - y \rangle} > 0.$$

■

### Exercise 6.1.27

Let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a norm on a real vector space  $V$  satisfying the parallelogram law given in Exercise 11. Define

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4}[\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2].$$

Prove that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  defines an inner product on  $V$  such that  $\|x\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle$  for all  $x \in V$ .

(a) Prove  $\langle x, 2y \rangle = 2\langle x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Then

$$\langle x, 2y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} [\|x + 2y\|^2 - \|x - 2y\|^2].$$

Observe that the expression inside the brackets of the equation above can be written as, using the parallelogram law,

$$\begin{aligned} \|x + 2y\|^2 - \|x - 2y\|^2 &= \|(x + y) + y\|^2 - \|(x - y) - y\|^2 \\ &= \|(x + y) + y\|^2 + \|(x + y) - y\|^2 \\ &\quad - (\|(x + y) - y\|^2 + \|(x - y) - y\|^2) \\ &= 2\|x + y\|^2 + 2\|y\|^2 - (2\|x - y\|^2 + 2\|y\|^2) \\ &= 2(\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2). \end{aligned}$$

This tells us that

$$\langle x, 2y \rangle = 2 \cdot \frac{1}{4} [\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2] = 2\langle x, y \rangle$$

which is our desired result. ■

(b) Prove  $\langle x + u, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + \langle u, y \rangle$  for all  $x, u, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y, u \in V$ . Observe that the parallelogram law can be written as

$$\frac{1}{2} [\|x + y\|^2 + \|x - y\|^2] = \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2.$$

Observe the sum

$$\langle x, y \rangle + \langle u, y \rangle = \frac{1}{4} [\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2] + \frac{1}{4} [\|u + y\|^2 - \|u - y\|^2].$$

The first term can be written further as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{4} [\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2] &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{2} [\|(x + y) + u\|^2 + \|(x + y) - u\|^2] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{1}{2} [\|(x - y) + u\|^2 + \|(x - y) - u\|^2] \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{2} [\|(x + u) + y\|^2 + \|(x + y) - u\|^2] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{1}{2} [\|(x + u) - y\|^2 + \|(x - y) - u\|^2] \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Likewise, the second term can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{4} [\|u + y\|^2 - \|u - y\|^2] &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{2} [\|(u + y) + x\|^2 + \|(u + y) - x\|^2] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{1}{2} [\|(u - y) + x\|^2 + \|(u - y) - x\|^2] \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{2} [\|(u + x) + y\|^2 + \|(x - y) - u\|^2] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{1}{2} [\|(x + u) - y\|^2 + \|(x + y) - u\|^2] \right]. \end{aligned}$$

As a whole, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, y \rangle + \langle u, y \rangle &= \frac{1}{4} [\|(x+u) + y\|^2 - \|(x+u) - y\|^2] \\ &= \langle x+u, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

■

- (c) Prove  $\langle nx, y \rangle = n\langle x, y \rangle$  for every positive integer  $n$  and every  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Let us proceed via induction to show the result. Note that the base case is trivial; that is, if  $n = 1$ , then we have  $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle$ . Suppose that the result holds for all positive integers less than  $n$ . Then observe that  $\langle (n-1)x, y \rangle = (n-1)\langle x, y \rangle$ . Using part (b), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\langle nx, y \rangle &= \langle ((n-1) + 1)x, y \rangle = \langle (n-1)x, y \rangle + \langle x, y \rangle \\ &= (n-1)\langle x, y \rangle + \langle x, y \rangle \\ &= ((n-1) + 1)\langle x, y \rangle \\ &= n\langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we see that  $\langle nx, y \rangle = n\langle x, y \rangle$  which is our desired result. ■

- (d) Prove  $m\langle \frac{1}{m}x, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle$  for every positive integer  $m$  and every  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  and let  $m$  be any positive integer. Then set  $z = \frac{1}{m}x$ . By using part (c), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}m\left\langle \frac{1}{m}x, y \right\rangle &= m\langle z, y \rangle \\ &= \langle mz, y \rangle \\ &= \left\langle m \cdot \frac{1}{m}x, y \right\rangle = \langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$m\left\langle \frac{1}{m}x, y \right\rangle = \langle x, y \rangle.$$

■

- (e) Prove  $\langle rx, y \rangle = r\langle x, y \rangle$  for every rational number  $r$  and every  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  and let  $r \in \mathbb{Q}$ . Observe that, by definition of rational numbers, we have  $r = p/q$  with  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $q \neq 0$ . Then we write

$$\begin{aligned}\langle rx, y \rangle &= \left\langle \frac{p}{q} \cdot x, y \right\rangle \\ &= p\left\langle \frac{1}{q}x, y \right\rangle && \text{(Part (c))} \\ &= \frac{p}{q}\langle x, y \rangle && \text{(Part (d))} \\ &= r\langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $\langle rx, y \rangle = r\langle x, y \rangle$ . ■

- (f) Prove  $|\langle x, y \rangle| \leq \|x\|\|y\|$  for every  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Using the triangle inequality for norms, we must have

$$\begin{aligned} |\langle x, y \rangle| &= \frac{1}{4} [\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2] \\ &\leq \frac{1}{4} [(\|x\| + \|y\|)^2 - \|x - y\|^2] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} [2\|x\|\|y\| - (\|x - y\|^2 - \|x\|^2 - \|y\|^2)] \\ &\leq \|x\|\|y\|. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $|\langle x, y \rangle| \leq \|x\|\|y\|$ . ■

(g) Prove that for every  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , every rational number  $r$ , and every  $x, y \in V$ ,

$$|c\langle x, y \rangle - \langle cx, y \rangle| = |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle - \langle (c - r)x, y \rangle| \leq 2|c - r|\|x\|\|y\|.$$

**Proof.** Let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $r \in \mathbb{Q}$ , and  $x, y \in V$ . Using part (e), we can write

$$\begin{aligned} |c\langle x, y \rangle - \langle cx, y \rangle| &= |c\langle x, y \rangle - r\langle x, y \rangle + r\langle x, y \rangle - \langle cx, y \rangle| \\ &= |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle + \langle (r - c)x, y \rangle| \\ &= |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle - \langle (c - r)x, y \rangle|. \end{aligned}$$

Working with the second equality, we can use the triangle inequality to write

$$\begin{aligned} |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle + \langle (r - c)x, y \rangle| &\leq |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle| + |\langle (r - c)x, y \rangle| \\ &= |c - r|\|\langle x, y \rangle\| + \|\langle (r - c)x, y \rangle\| \\ &\leq |c - r|\|x\|\|y\| + \|(r - c)x\|\|y\| \\ &= |c - r|\|x\|\|y\| + |c - r|\|x\|\|y\| \\ &= 2|c - r|\|x\|\|y\|. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we conclude that

$$|c\langle x, y \rangle - \langle cx, y \rangle| = |(c - r)\langle x, y \rangle - \langle (c - r)x, y \rangle| \leq 2|c - r|\|x\|\|y\|.$$

(h) Use the fact that for any  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $|c - r|$  can be made arbitrarily small, where  $r$  varies over the set of rational numbers, to establish item (b) of the definition of inner product.

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$  be non-zero. Let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Suppose that

$$|c - r| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2\|x\|\|y\|}.$$

Then we have

$$|c\langle x, y \rangle - \langle cx, y \rangle| \leq 2|c - r|\|x\|\|y\| < \varepsilon$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.1.28

Let  $V$  be a complex inner product space with an inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ . Let  $[\cdot, \cdot]$  be the real-valued function such that  $[x, y]$  is the real part of the complex number  $\langle x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ . Prove that

$[\cdot, \cdot]$  is an inner product for  $V$ , where  $V$  is regarded as a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Prove, furthermore, that  $[x, ix] = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y, z \in V$  and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .

(a) Since  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is linear in the first component, we must have that

$$\begin{aligned} [x + y, z] &= \Re \langle x + y, z \rangle = \Re(\langle x, z \rangle + \langle y, z \rangle) \\ &= \Re \langle x, z \rangle + \Re \langle y, z \rangle \\ &= [x, z] + [y, z]. \end{aligned}$$

(b)

$$\begin{aligned} [cx, y] &= \Re \langle cx, y \rangle = \Re c \langle x, y \rangle \\ &= c \Re \langle x, y \rangle \\ &= c[x, y]. \end{aligned}$$

(c)

$$\overline{[x, y]} = \Re \overline{\langle x, y \rangle} = \Re \langle y, x \rangle = [y, x].$$

(d) Suppose that  $x \neq 0$ . Since  $\langle x, x \rangle > 0$ , we also have that

$$[x, x] = \Re \langle x, x \rangle > 0.$$

So, property (d) is satisfied. Now, let us show that  $[x, ix] = 0$  for any  $x \in V$ . Now we can see that  $[\cdot, \cdot]$  is a inner product. Since  $\Re(i) = 0$ , we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} [x, ix] &= \Re \langle x, ix \rangle = \Re(\bar{i} \langle x, x \rangle) \\ &= \Re(-i) \Re \langle x, x \rangle \\ &= 0 \cdot \langle x, x \rangle = 0. \end{aligned}$$

So,  $[x, ix] = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . ■

### Exercise 6.1.29

Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ , and suppose that  $[\cdot, \cdot]$  is a real inner product on  $V$ , where  $V$  is regarded as a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ , such that  $[x, ix] = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . Let  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  be the complex-valued function defined by

$$\langle x, y \rangle = [x, y] + i[x, y] \quad \text{for } x, y \in V.$$

Prove that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is a complex inner product on  $V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y, z \in V$  and  $c \in F$ .

(a) Using the linearity of the first component of the inner product  $[\cdot, \cdot]$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x + y, z \rangle &= [x + y, z] + i[x + y, iz] \\ &= ([x, z] + [y, z]) + i([x, iz] + [y, iz]) \\ &= ([x, z] + i[x, iz]) + ([y, z] + i[y, iz]) \\ &= \langle x, z \rangle + \langle y, z \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

So we have  $\langle x + y, z \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle + \langle y, z \rangle$ .

(b) By the same reasoning, we also have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle cx, y \rangle &= [cx, y] + i[cx, iy] \\ &= c[x, y] + ci[x, iy] \\ &= c([x, y] + i[x, iy]) \\ &= c\langle x, y \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

So, part (b) is satisfied.

(c)

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\langle x, y \rangle} &= \overline{[x, y] + i[x, iy]} \\ &= \overline{[x, y]} + \overline{i[x, iy]} \\ &= [y, x] + \bar{i}[iy, x] \\ &= [y, x] + i[y, ix] \\ &= \langle y, x \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

(d) Suppose  $x \neq 0$ . Since  $[x, ix] = 0$  for any  $x \in V$  and that  $[x, x] > 0$  (Since  $[\cdot, \cdot]$  is a real inner product for  $V$ ), we can write

$$\langle x, x \rangle = [x, x] + i[x, ix] = [x, x] > 0.$$

Thus, property (d) is satisfied. Hence, we conclude that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is a complex inner product on  $V$ . ■

## 6.2 Gram-Schmidt Orthogonalization Process

### Exercise 6.2.6

Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of  $V$ . If  $x \notin W$ , prove that there exists  $y \in V$  such that  $y \in W^\perp$ , but  $\langle x, y \rangle \neq 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$  but not in  $W$ . By Theorem 6.6, there exists unique scalars  $u \in W$  and  $y \in W^\perp$  such that  $x = u + y$  if and only if  $y = x - u$ . Then observe that

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \langle x, x - u \rangle = \langle x, x \rangle - \langle x, u \rangle.$$

If  $x = 0$ , then we would find that  $x \in W$  since  $W$  is a finite-dimensional subspace of  $V$  which is a contradiction. Does  $x$  must be non-zero as well as  $x - u \neq 0$  since  $U$  is a unique scalar. Otherwise, we gain the same contradiction. Thus, we have that  $\langle x, y \rangle \neq 0$ . ■

### Exercise 6.2.7

Let  $\beta$  be a basis for a subspace  $W$  an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $z \in V$ . Prove that  $z \in W^\perp$  if and only if  $\langle z, v \rangle = 0$  for every  $v \in \beta$ .

**Proof.** Let  $z \in W^\perp$  and  $v \in \beta$ . Then by definition of  $W^\perp$  and the fact that  $\beta \subseteq W$ , we must have  $\langle z, v \rangle = 0$ .

Conversely, suppose  $\langle z, v \rangle = 0$  for all  $v \in \beta$ . Since  $\beta \subseteq W$ , we immediately have  $z \in W^\perp$ . ■

### Exercise 6.2.8

Prove that if  $\{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}$  is an orthogonal set of nonzero vectors, then the vectors  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$  derived from the Gram-Schmidt process satisfy  $v_i = w_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

**Proof.** We proceed by mathematical induction on  $n$ . Let  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and let  $S = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k\}$  be an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors. Let  $S' = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be constructed as in with the setup in Theorem 6.4. Let  $k = 1$  be our base case. Then  $v_1 = w_1$  as in Theorem 6.4. Now, suppose the result holds for the  $k-1$  case. Since each  $v_{k-1} = w_{k-1}$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and that  $S$  is an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors, we have

$$\begin{aligned} v_k &= w_k - \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \frac{\langle w_k, v_j \rangle}{\|v_j\|^2} v_j \\ &= w_k - \left[ \frac{\langle w_k, v_1 \rangle}{\|v_1\|^2} v_1 + \frac{\langle w_k, v_2 \rangle}{\|v_2\|^2} v_2 + \dots + \frac{\langle w_k, v_{k-1} \rangle}{\|v_{k-1}\|^2} v_{k-1} \right] \\ &= w_k - \left[ \frac{\langle w_k, w_1 \rangle}{\|w_1\|^2} w_1 + \frac{\langle w_k, w_2 \rangle}{\|w_2\|^2} w_2 + \dots + \frac{\langle w_k, w_{k-1} \rangle}{\|w_{k-1}\|^2} w_{k-1} \right] \\ &= w_k \end{aligned}$$

which ends our induction argument. Thus, we conclude that  $v_k = w_k$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . ■

### Exercise 6.2.10

Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$ . Prove that  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ . Prove that there exists a projection  $T$  on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$  that satisfies  $N(T) = W^\perp$ . In addition, prove that  $\|T(x)\| \leq \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $W$ . Let  $x \in V$ . By Theorem 6.6, we can find  $u \in W$  and  $z \in W^\perp$  such that  $x = u + z$ . Thus,  $V = W + W^\perp$ . Note that  $W \cap W^\perp = \{0\}$ . So,  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ . Now, define the map

$$T : V \rightarrow V \text{ by } T(x) = u$$

with  $x \in V$ . We will show that this map is a projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$ . Note that it can be easily shown that this map is linear. Since  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ , we have  $x = u + z$  where  $u \in W$  and  $z \in W^\perp$ . Thus,  $T$  must be a projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$ .

Next, we will show that  $T$  satisfies  $N(T) = W^\perp$ . Let  $x \in W^\perp$ . Since  $T$  is a projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$ , we have  $T(x) = 0$ . So,  $x \in N(T)$ . For the other containment, let  $x \in N(T)$ . Then by definition of  $N(T)$ , we have  $T(x) = 0$ . With  $T$  being a projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$ , we have  $x = 0 + z$  where  $z \in W^\perp$ . But this tells us that  $x \in W^\perp$ . Thus, we conclude that  $N(T) = W^\perp$ .

Let  $x \in V$ . Then  $x = u + z$  since  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ . By Exercise 10 from Section 6.1, we have

$$\|x\|^2 = \|u + z\|^2 = \|u\|^2 + \|z\|^2 \geq \|u\|^2 = \|T(x)\|^2.$$

Thus, we have  $\|T(x)\| \leq \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$ . ■

### Exercise 6.2.13

Let  $V$  be an inner product space,  $S$  and  $S_0$  be subsets of  $V$ , and  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of  $V$ . Prove the following results.

- (a)  $S_0 \subseteq S$  implies that  $S^\perp \subseteq S_0^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $S_0 \subseteq S$ . Let  $s_0 \in S_0$ . Then  $s_0 \in S$  as well. If we let  $x \in S^\perp$ , then we see that  $\langle x, s_0 \rangle = 0$ . But  $s_0$  is an element of  $S_0$ , so  $x \in S_0^\perp$  and we are done. ■

- (b)  $S \subseteq (S^\perp)^\perp$ ; so  $\text{span}(S) \subseteq (S^\perp)^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Let  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k \in S$ . If  $y \in \text{span}(S)$ , then

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i$$

for some scalars  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$ . Since  $S \subseteq (S^\perp)^\perp$ , we see that  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k \in (S^\perp)^\perp$ . So,  $y$  must also be an element of  $(S^\perp)^\perp$  and we are done. ■

- (c)  $W = (W^\perp)^\perp$ .

**Proof.** By part (b), we have  $W \subseteq (W^\perp)^\perp$ . We need only show the other containment now, namely,  $(W^\perp)^\perp \subseteq W$ . Suppose for sake of contradiction that  $x \notin W$ . Now, let  $x \in (W^\perp)^\perp$ . By definition, we have

$$\langle x, w \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } w \in W^\perp.$$

However, we have  $x \notin W$  implies that  $w \in W^\perp$  such that  $\langle x, w \rangle \neq 0$  for all  $w \in W^\perp$  which contradicts the assumption that  $x \in (W^\perp)^\perp$ . Thus, we must have  $(W^\perp)^\perp \subseteq W$ . Hence, we conclude that

$$W = (W^\perp)^\perp. \quad \blacksquare$$

- (d)  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Since  $W$  is a subspace and finite-dimensional, let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $W$ . By Theorem 6.7, we have  $\dim(V) = \dim(W) + \dim(W^\perp)$ . Note that  $W \cap W^\perp = \{0\}$ . By Exercise 29 (a), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(V) &= \dim(W) + \dim(W^\perp) - \dim(W \cap W^\perp) \\ &= \dim(W + W^\perp). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $V = W + W^\perp$ . Thus, we conclude that

$$V = W \oplus W^\perp.$$



### Exercise 6.2.14

Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a finite-dimensional inner product space. Prove that  $(W_1 + W_2)^\perp = W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp$  and  $(W_1 \cap W_2)^\perp = W_1^\perp + W_2^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space. We will first show that  $(W_1 + W_2)^\perp \subseteq W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp$ . Since  $W_1 \cap W_2 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$ , we can see by part (a) that  $(W_1 + W_2)^\perp \subseteq W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp$ . Let  $x \in W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp$ . Then  $x \in W_1^\perp$  and  $x \in W_2^\perp$ . So,  $\langle x, w_1 \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle x, w_2 \rangle = 0$  for all  $w_1 \in W_1$  and  $w_2 \in W_2$ , respectively. Since

$$\langle x, w_1 \rangle + \langle x, w_2 \rangle = \langle x, w_1 + w_2 \rangle = 0,$$

we can see that  $x \in (W_1 + W_2)^\perp$ . So,  $W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp \subseteq (W_1 + W_2)^\perp$ . Thus,

$$(W_1 + W_2)^\perp = W_1^\perp \cap W_2^\perp. \quad (1)$$

Now, we can use the first equation to show the second equation. Then by using part(c) of Exercise 13 and (1), we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} (W_1 \cap W_2)^\perp &= ((W_1^\perp)^\perp \cap (W_2^\perp)^\perp) \\ &= ((W_1^\perp + W_2^\perp)^\perp)^\perp \\ &= W_1^\perp + W_2^\perp \end{aligned}$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.2.15

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space over  $F$ .

- (a) *Parseval's Identity.* Let  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . For any  $x, y \in V$  prove that

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \overline{\langle y, v_i \rangle}.$$

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Since  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ , write

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \quad \text{and} \quad y = \sum_{j=1}^n \langle y, v_j \rangle v_j.$$

Since  $\langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$  where  $\delta_{ij} = 1$  whenever  $i = j$  and  $\delta_{ij} = 0$  otherwise, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, y \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i, \sum_{j=1}^n \langle y, v_j \rangle v_j \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \left\langle v_i, \sum_{j=1}^n \langle y, v_j \rangle v_j \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \sum_{j=1}^n \overline{\langle y, v_j \rangle} \langle v_i, v_j \rangle \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \overline{\langle y, v_i \rangle}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \overline{\langle y, v_i \rangle}.$$

■

- (b) Use (a) to prove that if  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$  with inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , then for any  $x, y \in V$

$$\langle \phi_\beta(x), \phi_\beta(y) \rangle' = \langle [x]_\beta, [y]_\beta \rangle' = \langle x, y \rangle.$$

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Since  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ , write

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \quad \text{and} \quad y = \sum_{j=1}^n \langle y, v_j \rangle v_j.$$

Since  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$  is the standard inner product on  $F^n$ , we have

$$\langle \phi_\beta(x), \phi_\beta(y) \rangle' = \langle [x]_\beta, [y]_\beta \rangle' = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle \overline{\langle y, v_i \rangle} = \langle x, y \rangle$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.2.16

- (a) *Bessel's Inequality.* Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and let  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal subset of  $V$ . Prove that for any  $x \in V$  we have

$$\|x\|^2 \geq \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2.$$

**Proof.** Suppose that the orthonormal subset  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  generates some subspace  $W$  of  $V$ . Note that this implies that  $W$  is a finite-dimensional subspace of  $V$ . Let  $x \in V$ . Using Theorem 6.6, there exists unique vectors  $u \in W$  and  $z \in W^\perp$  such that  $x = u + z$ . Since  $S$  is an orthonormal basis for  $W$ , we must have that

$$u = \sum_{i=1}^k \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

By using Exercise 10 from Section 6.1 and the fact that  $S$  is an orthonormal set, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned}\|x\|^2 &= \|u + z\|^2 \geq \|u\|^2 = \left\| \sum_{i=1}^k \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \right\|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2 \|v_i\|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2\end{aligned}$$

which establishes our result.  $\blacksquare$

(b) In the context of (a), prove that Bessel's inequality is an equality if and only if  $x \in \text{span}(S)$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that Bessel's inequality is an equality. Since  $S$  is an orthonormal subset of  $V$  and Exercise 10 from Section 6.1, we see that

$$\|x\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2 \|v_i\|^2 = \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \right\|^2.$$

This implies that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i$$

and thus  $x \in \text{span}(S)$ .

Conversely, suppose  $x \in \text{span}(S)$ . Then

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

Using Exercise 10 again, we have

$$\|x\|^2 = \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \right\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2 \|v_i\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle|^2$$

which achieves the equality of (a).  $\blacksquare$

### Exercise 6.2.17

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an inner product space  $V$ . If  $\langle T(x), y \rangle = 0$  for all  $x, y \in V$ , prove that  $T = T_0$ . In fact, prove this result if the equality holds for all  $x$  and  $y$  in some basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Our goal is to show that  $T_0 = T$ . Consider  $T_0$ . Then  $V$  being an inner product space implies that we have  $\langle T_0(x), y \rangle = \langle 0, y \rangle = 0$  for all  $x \in V$  where  $T_0(x) = 0$ . Since  $\langle T(x), y \rangle = 0$ , this must imply that  $T(x) = T_0(x)$ . Thus,  $T = T_0$ . Now, suppose  $\beta$  is a basis for  $V$  where  $x, y \in \beta$ . Using Exercise 9 from the last section, we see that  $\langle T_0(x), y \rangle = \langle T(x), y \rangle$  implies that  $T_0(x) = T(x)$ . So,  $T = T_0$ .  $\blacksquare$

### Exercise 6.2.18

Let  $V = C([-1, 1])$ . Suppose that  $W_e$  and  $W_o$  denote the subspaces of  $V$  consisting of the even and odd functions, respectively. Prove that  $W_e^\perp = W_o$ , where the inner product on  $V$  is defined by

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^1 f(t)g(t) dt.$$

**Proof.** Our goal is to show that  $W_o \subseteq W_e^\perp$  and  $W_e^\perp \subseteq W_o$ . Let  $f \in W_o$ . Consider  $\langle f, g \rangle$ . Then by definition

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^1 f(t)g(t) dt$$

where  $g \in W_e$ . We need to show that  $\langle f, g \rangle = 0$  for all  $g \in W_e$ . Since  $g$  is an even function and  $f$  is an odd function, then the product  $fg$  is an odd function. By our integration properties, we have that

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^1 f(t)g(t) dt = \int_{-1}^1 fg(t) dt = 0.$$

Hence,  $f \in W_e^\perp$ .

Let  $f \in W_e^\perp$ . Suppose for sake of contradiction that  $f \notin W_o$ ; that is,  $f$  is an even function. By definition of  $W_e^\perp$ , we have

$$0 = \langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^1 f(t)g(t) dt = \int_{-1}^1 fg(t) dt = 2 \int_0^1 fg(t) dt.$$

But we have  $fg$  is a continuous even function where

$$\int_{-1}^1 fg(t) dt - 2 \int_0^1 fg(t) dt \neq 0$$

which is a contradiction since we have assumed that  $f \in W_e^\perp$ . Hence, we must have  $f \in W_o$ . Thus, we conclude that  $W_o = W_e^\perp$ . ■

### Exercise 6.2.23

Let  $V$  be the vector space defined in Example 5 of Section 1.2, the space of all sequences  $\sigma$  in  $F$  (where  $F = \mathbb{R}$  or  $F = \mathbb{C}$ ) such that  $\sigma(n) \neq 0$  for only finitely many positive integers  $n$ . For  $\sigma, \mu \in V$ , we define  $\langle \sigma, \mu \rangle = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sigma(n)\mu(n)$ . Since all but a finite number of terms of the series are zero, the series converges.

- (a) Prove that  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is an inner product on  $V$ , and hence  $V$  is an inner product space.

**Proof.** ■

- (b) For each positive integer  $n$ , let  $e_n$  be the sequence defined by  $e_n(k) = \delta_{nk}$ , where  $\delta_{nk}$  is the Kronecker delta. Prove that  $\{e_1, e_2, \dots\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** ■

- (c) Let  $\sigma_n = e_1 + e_n$  and  $W = \text{span}(\{\sigma_n : n \geq 2\})$ .

- (i) Prove that  $e_1 \notin W$ , so  $W \neq V$ .

**Proof.** ■

- (ii) Prove that  $W^\perp = \{0\}$ , and conclude that  $W \neq (W^\perp)^\perp$ . Thus the assumption in Exercise 13(c) that  $W$  is finite-dimensional is essential.

**Proof.** ■

## 6.3 The Adjoint of a Linear Operator

### Exercise 6.3.4

Complete the proof of Theorem 6.11.

**Proof.** Let  $T$  and  $U$  be linear operators on  $V$  whose adjoints exist. Let  $x, y \in V$  and  $c \in F$ . Then

- (a) Since

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, (T + U)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle (T + U)(x), y \rangle \\ &= \langle T(x) + U(x), y \rangle \\ &= \langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle U(x), y \rangle \\ &= \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle + \langle x, U^*(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle x, (T^* + U^*)(y) \rangle,\end{aligned}$$

we have  $(T + U)^* = T^* + U^*$ .

- (b) Since

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, (cT)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle cT(x), y \rangle \\ &= c\langle T(x), y \rangle \\ &= c\langle x, T^*(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle x, \bar{c}T^*(y) \rangle,\end{aligned}$$

we must have  $(cT)^* = \bar{c}T^*$ .

- (c) Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, (TU)^*(y) \rangle &= \langle (TU)(x), y \rangle \\ &= \langle T(U(x)), y \rangle \\ &= \langle U(x), T^*(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle x, U^*(T^*(y)) \rangle \\ &= \langle x, (U^*T^*)(y) \rangle\end{aligned}$$

which implies that  $(TU)^* = U^*T^*$ .

- (d) Since

$$\langle x, (T^*)^*(y) \rangle = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle.$$

1. (e) Observe that

$$\langle x, I^*(y) \rangle = \langle I(x), y \rangle = \langle x, I(y) \rangle$$

■

### Exercise 6.3.5

- (a) Complete the proof of the corollary to Theorem 6.11 by using Theorem 6.11, as in the proof of (c).

**Proof.** Let  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(F)$  and let  $\beta$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V = F^n$ . Using Theorem 6.10, we have

- (a)

$$\begin{aligned} (A + B)^* &= [L_{A+B}]_\beta^* = [L_A^* + L_B^*]_\beta \\ &= [L_A^*]_\beta + [L_B^*]_\beta \\ &= [L_A]_\beta^* + [L_B]_\beta^* \\ &= A^* + B^*. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Let  $c \in F$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (cA)^* &= [L_{cA}]_\beta^* = [cL_A^*]_\beta \\ &= c[L_A^*]_\beta \\ &= c[L_A]_\beta^* \\ &= cA^*. \end{aligned}$$

- (c) Using Theorem 2.15, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (AB)^* &= [L_{AB}]_\beta^* = [L_{AB}^*]_\beta \\ &= [(L_A L_B)^*]_\beta \\ &= [L_B^* L_A^*]_\beta \\ &= [L_B^*]_\beta [L_A^*]_\beta \\ &= [L_B]_\beta^* [L_A]_\beta^* \\ &= B^* A^*. \end{aligned}$$

- (d) Since  $L_A^{**} = L_A$ , we must have  $A^{**} = A$ .

■

- (b) State a result for nonsquare matrices that is analogous to the corollary to Theorem 6.11, and prove it using a matrix argument.

**Proof.** For nonsquare matrices, we can just use the definition of the conjugate. Let  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Thus, we have

(a)

$$\begin{aligned}\left((A+B)^*\right)_{ij} &= \overline{(A+B)_{ji}} = \overline{A_{ji} + B_{ji}} \\ &= \overline{A_{ji}} + \overline{B_{ji}} \\ &= (A^*)_{ij} + (B^*)_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $(A+B)^* = A^* + B^*$ .

(b)

$$\begin{aligned}\left((cA)^*\right)_{ij} &= \overline{(cA)_{ji}} = \overline{cA_{ji}} \\ &= \overline{c}\overline{A_{ji}} \\ &= \overline{c}(A^*)_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $(cA)^* = \overline{c}(A^*)_{ij}$ .

(c) Using our definition of matrix multiplication found in Section 2.2, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\left((AB)^*\right)_{ij} &= \overline{(AB)_{ji}} = \overline{\sum_{k=1}^n A_{jk}B_{ki}} = \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{A_{jk}B_{ki}} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{A_{jk}}\overline{B_{ki}} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (B^*)_{ik}(A^*)_{kj} \\ &= (B^*A^*)_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

(d)

$$(A^{**})_{ij} = \overline{(A^*)_{ji}} = \overline{\overline{A_{ij}}} = A_{ij}.$$

So,  $A^{**} = A$ .

(e)

$$(I^*)_{ij} = \overline{I_{ji}} = I_{ij}.$$

So, we have  $I^* = I$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.5

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an inner product space  $V$ . Let  $U_1 = T + T^*$  and  $U_2 = TT^*$ . Prove that  $U_1 = U_1^*$  and  $U_2 = U_2^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $U_1 = T + T^*$  and  $U_2 = TT^*$ . Using Theorem 6.11, we have

$$U_1^* = (T + T^*)^* = T^* + T^{**} = T^* + T = U_1.$$

Likewise, we have

$$U_2^* = (TT^*)^* = T^{**}T^* = TT^* = U_2. \quad \blacksquare$$

### Exercise 6.3.8

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Prove that if  $T$  is invertible, then  $T^*$  is invertible and  $(T^*)^{-1} = (T^{-1})^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in V$ . Our goal is to show that  $T^*(T^{-1})^* = (T^{-1})^*T^* = I$ . Consider the inner product  $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle$ . Since  $T$  is invertible, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle T(x), I(y) \rangle &= \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle = \langle T^{-1}T(x), T^*(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle T(x), (T^{-1})^*T^*(y) \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Using Theorem 6.1, we must have  $(T^*)^{-1}T^* = I$ . Now, let us show  $T^*(T^{-1})^* = I$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle T(x), I(y) \rangle &= \langle T(x), T^{-1}T(y) \rangle \\ &= \langle T^*(T^{-1})^*T(x), I(y) \rangle\end{aligned}$$

This implies that  $T^*(T^{-1})^*T = T$ . Since  $T$  is invertible, we have  $T^*(T^{-1})^* = I$ . Thus,  $T^*$  is invertible and therefore  $(T^*)^{-1} = (T^{-1})^*$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.9

Prove that if  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$  and  $T$  is the projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$  then  $T = T^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$  such that  $x = u + z$  where  $u \in W$  and  $z \in W^\perp$ . Since  $z \in W^\perp$  and that  $W^\perp = N(T)$ , we have  $T(z) = 0$ . Furthermore,  $\langle z, u \rangle = 0$ . Since  $T$  is a projection on  $W$  along  $W^\perp$ , we must have that

$$\langle z, T(u) \rangle = \langle z, T(u) \rangle = 0.$$

But notice that given  $u, z \in V$ , the fact that

$$\langle T(z), u \rangle = \langle z, T^*(u) \rangle = 0$$

must also be satisfied. This tells us that  $\langle z, T(u) \rangle = \langle z, T^*(u) \rangle$  implies  $T(u) = T^*(u)$  for all  $u \in W$  by Theorem 6.1 and that  $T^* = T$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.10

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an inner product space  $V$ . Prove that  $\|T(x)\| = \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$  if and only if  $\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in V$ .

**Proof.** For the forwards direction, let  $x, y \in V$ . Suppose  $\|T(x)\| = \|x\|$ . Using Exercise 10 from Section 6.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, y \rangle &= \frac{1}{4} [\|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} [\|T(x + y)\|^2 - \|T(x - y)\|^2] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} [\|T(x) + T(y)\|^2 - \|T(x) - T(y)\|^2].\end{aligned}$$



Consider  $\|T(x) + T(y)\|^2$ . If  $F = \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\|T(x) + T(y)\|^2 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + 2\Re\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle + \|T(y)\|^2 \\ &= \|T(x)\|^2 + 2\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle + \|T(y)\|^2\end{aligned}$$

by Exercise 19 from Section 6.1. Likewise, we have

$$\|T(x) - T(y)\|^2 = \|T(x)\|^2 - 2\langle T(x), T(y) \rangle + \|T(y)\|^2.$$

Thus, we conclude that

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \langle T(x), T(y) \rangle.$$

■

### Exercise 6.3.11

For a linear operator  $T$  on an inner product space  $V$ , prove that  $T^*T = T_0$  implies  $T = T_0$ . Is the same result true if we assume that  $TT^* = T_0$ ?

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$ . Consider the norm  $\|T(x)\|$ . Then observe that

$$\|T(x)\|^2 = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle = \langle x, T^*T(x) \rangle = \langle x, T_0(x) \rangle = 0$$

since  $T^*T = T_0$ . By part (d) of Theorem 6.1,  $T(x) = 0$  and so we conclude that  $T_0 = T$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.12

Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Prove the following results.

(a)  $R(T^*)^\perp = N(T)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $y \in R(T^*)^\perp$ . Then  $\langle y, z \rangle = 0$  for all  $z \in R(T^*)$ . By definition of  $R(T^*)$ , we have  $T^*(x) = z$  for some  $x \in V$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle y, z \rangle &= \langle y, T^*(x) \rangle = 0 \\ &= \langle T(y), x \rangle\end{aligned}$$

which implies  $\langle T(y), x \rangle = 0$ . Using Exercise 17 from Section 6.1,  $T = T^0$ . So,  $T(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in V$  and thus  $y \in N(T)$ . Now, let  $y \in N(T)$ . Then  $T(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in V$ . Fix  $z \in V$ . Then

$$\langle T(y), z \rangle = \langle y, T^*(z) \rangle = 0.$$

Observe that  $T^*(z) \in R(T^*)$ . So,  $y \in R(T^*)^\perp$  and we conclude that  $R(T^*)^\perp = N(T)$ . ■

(b) If  $V$  is finite-dimensional, then  $R(T^*) = N(T)^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $V$  is finite-dimensional. Using Exercise 13 (c) from Section 6.2 and part (a), we have

$$R(T^*) = \left(R(T^*)^\perp\right)^\perp = \left(N(T)\right)^\perp.$$

Thus,  $R(T^*) = N(T)^\perp$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.13

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ . Prove the following results.

- (a)  $N(T^*T) = N(T)$ . Deduce that  $\text{rank}(T^*T) = \text{rank}(T)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in N(T^*T)$ . Then we have  $T^*T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . But note that  $T^*T = T_0$ , so we have  $T = T_0$  by Exercise 6.3.11. Thus,  $T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V$  which implies  $x \in N(T)$ . Now, let  $x \in N(T)$ . Then  $T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . Then

$$T^*T(x) = T^*(0) = 0$$

for all  $x \in V$ . Thus,  $x \in N(T^*T)$  and so we conclude that  $N(T^*T) = N(T)$ . Using the Dimension Theorem, we can see that

$$\dim(R(T)) + \dim(N(T)) = \dim(R(T^*T)) + \dim(N(T^*T))$$

implies  $\dim(R(T)) = \dim(R(T^*T))$  so  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T^*T)$ . ■

- (b)  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T^*)$ . Deduce from (a) that  $\text{rank}(TT^*) = \text{rank}(T)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $\text{rank}(T^*T) = \text{rank}(T)$  and that  $\text{rank}(T^*T) = \text{rank}(T^*)$ , we have  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{rank}(T^*)$ . From (a), we get that

$$\text{rank}(TT^*) = \text{rank}((T^*T)^*) = \text{rank}(T^*T) = \text{rank}(T).$$

■

- (c) For any  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$ ,  $\text{rank}(A^*A) = \text{rank}(AA^*) = \text{rank}(A)$ .

**Proof.** Using parts (a) and (b) as well as the corollary to Theorem 6.10, we have

$$R(L_{A^*A}) = R(L_{A^*}L_A) = R((L_A)^*L_A) = R(L_A)$$

and similarly, we have

$$R(L_{AA^*}) = R(L_AL_{A^*}) = R(L_A(L_A)^*) = R(L_A).$$

So, we conclude that

$$\text{rank}(A^*A) = \text{rank}(AA^*) = \text{rank}(A).$$

■

### Exercise 6.3.14

Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and let  $y, z \in V$ . Define  $T : V \rightarrow V$  by  $T(x) = \langle x, y \rangle z$  for all  $x \in V$ . First prove that  $T$  is linear. Then show that  $T^*$  exists, and find an explicit expression for it.

**Proof.** Fix  $y, z \in V$ . Let  $x_1, x_2 \in V$  and  $\varepsilon \in F$ . Our first goal is to show that  $T : V \rightarrow V$

is linear. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T(\varepsilon x_1 + x_2) &= \langle \varepsilon x_1 + x_2, y \rangle z \\ &= \langle \varepsilon x_1, y \rangle z + \langle x_2, y \rangle z \\ &= \varepsilon T(x_1) + T(x_2). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T$  is linear. Using Theorem 6.9, there exists a function  $T^* : V \rightarrow V$  such that  $\langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle$  for  $x, y \in V$ . Consider the inner product  $\langle x, T^*(x) \rangle$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, T^*(x) \rangle &= \langle T(x), x \rangle = \langle \langle x, y \rangle z, x \rangle \\ &= \langle x, y \rangle \langle z, x \rangle \\ &= \langle x, \langle x, z \rangle y \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Using Theorem 6.1, we see that  $T^*(x) = \langle x, z \rangle y$ . ■

**Definition 6.3.1.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, where  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional inner product spaces with inner products  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_1$  and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_2$ , respectively. A function  $T^* : W \rightarrow V$  is called an **adjoint** of  $T$  if  $\langle T(x), y \rangle_2 = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle_1$  for all  $x \in V$  and  $y \in W$ .

### Exercise 6.3.15

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, where  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional inner product spaces with inner products  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_1$  and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_2$ , respectively. Prove the following results.

- (a) There is a unique adjoint  $T^*$  of  $T$ , and  $T^*$  is linear.

**Proof.** Define the function  $f : W \rightarrow F$  by  $f(x) = \langle T(x), y \rangle_2$ . By Theorem 6.8, there exists a unique vector  $y' \in V$  such that  $f(x) = \langle x, y' \rangle_1$ . Define  $T^* : W \rightarrow V$  by  $T^*(y) = y'$  for  $y \in W$ . Thus, we have  $\langle T(x), y \rangle_2 = \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle_1$ . Let  $\varepsilon \in F$  and  $y_1, y_2 \in W$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, T^*(\varepsilon y_1 + y_2) \rangle_1 &= \langle T(x), \varepsilon y_1 + y_2 \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle T(x), \varepsilon y_1 \rangle_2 + \langle T(x), y_2 \rangle_2 \\ &= \varepsilon \langle T(x), y_1 \rangle_2 + \langle T(x), y_2 \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle x, \varepsilon T^*(y_1) \rangle_1 + \langle x, T^*(y_2) \rangle_1 \\ &= \langle x, \varepsilon T^*(y_1) + T^*(y_2) \rangle_1. \end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 6.1, we conclude that  $T^*(\varepsilon y_1 + y_2) = \varepsilon T^*(y_1) + T^*(y_2)$  and thus  $T^*$  is linear. To prove uniqueness, suppose there exists the linear map  $U : W \rightarrow V$  such that  $\langle T(x), y \rangle_2 = \langle x, U(y) \rangle_1$ . Then we have  $\langle x, T^*(y) \rangle_1 = \langle x, U(y) \rangle_1$  implies  $T^* = U$ . Thus,  $T^*$  is a unique linear map. ■

- (b) If  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are orthonormal bases for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively, then  $[T^*]_\gamma^\beta = ([T]_\beta^\gamma)^*$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and  $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m\}$  be orthonormal bases for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. Define  $A = [T]_\beta^\gamma$  and  $B = [T^*]_\gamma^\beta$ . Using the corollary to Theorem 6.5, we have  $B_{ij} = \langle T^*(w_j), v_i \rangle_2$  and  $A_{ij} = \langle T(v_j), w_i \rangle_1$ . Our goal is to show that

$B_{ij} = (A^*)_{ij}$ . For  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} B_{ij} &= \langle T^*(w_j), v_i \rangle_2 = \overline{\langle v_i, T^*(w_j) \rangle_2} \\ &= \overline{\langle T(v_i), w_j \rangle_1} \\ &= \overline{A_{ji}} \\ &= (A^*)_{ij}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $[T^*]_\gamma^\beta = ([T]_\beta^\gamma)^*$ . ■

(c)  $\text{rank}(T^*) = \text{rank}(T)$ .

**Proof.** Apply part Exercise 6.3.13 part (b). ■

(d)  $\langle T^*(x), y \rangle_1 = \langle x, T(y) \rangle_2$  for all  $x \in W$  and  $y \in V$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in W$  and  $y \in V$ . Then observe that

$$\langle T^*(x), y \rangle_1 = \overline{\langle y, T^*(x) \rangle_1} = \overline{\langle T(y), x \rangle_2} = \langle x, T(y) \rangle_2$$

which is our desired result. ■

(e) For all  $x \in V$ ,  $T^*T(x) = 0$  if and only if  $T(x) = 0$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$  and suppose  $T^*T(x) = 0$ . Consider the norm  $\|T(x)\|$ . Using part (a), we have

$$\|T(x)\|^2 = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle_2 = \langle x, T^*T(x) \rangle_1 = 0.$$

By Theorem 6.1, this is true if and only if  $T(x) = 0$ . Conversely, let  $T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . Then

$$T^*T(x) = T^*(T(x)) = T^*(0) = 0$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.3.16

State and prove a result that extends the first four parts of Theorem 6.11 using the preceding definition.

**Proof.** Define  $T : V \rightarrow W$  and  $U : V \rightarrow W$ . Let  $x \in V$  and  $y \in W$ .

(a) Since

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, (T + U)^*(y) \rangle_1 &= \langle (T + U)(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle T(x) + U(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle T(x), y \rangle_2 + \langle U(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle x, T^*(y) \rangle_1 + \langle x, U^*(y) \rangle_1 \\ &= \langle x, (T^* + U^*)(y) \rangle_1, \end{aligned}$$

we have  $(T + U)^* = T^* + U^*$ .

(b) Let  $c \in F$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, (cT)^*(y) \rangle_1 &= \langle cT(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= c\langle T(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= c\langle x, T^*(y) \rangle_1 \\ &= \langle x, \bar{c}T^*(y) \rangle_1,\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that  $(cT)^* = \bar{c}T^*$ .

(c) Define  $T : W \rightarrow Z$  and  $U : V \rightarrow W$ . Define  $TU : V \rightarrow Z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x, (TU)^*(y) \rangle_1 &= \langle (TU)(x), y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle T(U(x)), y \rangle_2 \\ &= \langle U(x), T^*(y) \rangle_1 \\ &= \langle x, U^*(T^*(y)) \rangle_1 \\ &= \langle x, (U^*T^*)(y) \rangle_1\end{aligned}$$

which implies that  $(TU)^* = U^*T^*$ .

(d) Since

$$\langle x, (T^*)^*(y) \rangle_1 = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle_2 = \langle x, T(y) \rangle_1.$$

■

### Exercise 6.3.17

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, where  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional inner product spaces. Prove that  $(R(T^*))^\perp = N(T)$ , using the preceding definition.

**Proof.** Let  $y \in R(T^*)^\perp$ . Then  $\langle y, z \rangle_2 = 0$  for all  $z \in R(T^*)$ . Since  $z \in R(T^*)$ , we have  $T^*(x) = z$  for some  $x \in V$ . Then we have

$$0 = \langle y, z \rangle_2 = \langle y, T^*(x) \rangle_2 = \langle T(y), x \rangle_1.$$

By Exercise 17 from Section 6.2, we see that  $T = T_0$ . So, we must have  $T(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in V$ . Thus,  $y \in N(T)$ .

Conversely,  $y \in N(T)$  implies that

$$\langle T(y), z \rangle_1 = \langle y, T^*(z) \rangle_2.$$

But  $T(y) = 0$  for all  $y \in V$  which means  $\langle y, T^*(z) \rangle_2 = 0$ . Since  $T^*(z) \in R(T^*)$ , we have  $y \in R(T^*)^\perp$ . Thus, we conclude that  $(R(T^*))^\perp = N(T)$ . ■

### Exercise 6.3.18

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Prove that  $\det(A^*) = \overline{\det(A)}$ .

**Proof.** We proceed by mathematical induction on  $n \geq 1$ . Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Note that the result immediately follows for  $n = 1$ . Now, assume that the result holds for  $n - 1 \times n - 1$  matrices. Thus,  $\det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) = \det(\tilde{A}_{j1}^*)$ . By cofactor expansion along the first

row (or the first column), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \overline{\det(A)} &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} A_{1j} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{1j}) \\
 &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} \overline{A_{1j}} \cdot \overline{\det(\tilde{A}_{1j})} \\
 &= \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{1+j} (A^*)_{j1} \cdot \det(\tilde{A}_{j1}^*) \\
 &= \det(A^*).
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that  $\overline{\det(A)} = \det(A^*)$ . ■

## 6.4 Normal and Self-Adjoint Operators

### Exercise 6.4.4

Let  $T$  and  $U$  be self-adjoint operators on an inner product space  $V$ . Prove that  $TU$  is self-adjoint if and only if  $TU = UT$ .

**Proof.** Let  $T$  and  $U$  be self-adjoint operators on an inner product space  $V$ . For the forwards direction, suppose  $TU$  is self-adjoint. Then we have

$$TU = (TU)^* = U^*T^* = UT.$$

Conversely, suppose  $TU = UT$ . Then

$$(TU)^* = U^*T^* = UT = TU.$$

Thus,  $TU$  is self-adjoint. ■

### Exercise 6.4.5

Prove (b) of Theorem 6.15.

**Proof.** Suppose  $c \in F$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (T - cI)(T - cI)^* &= (T - cI)(T^* - \bar{c}I) \\
 &= TT^* - cT^* - \bar{c}(IT) + c\bar{c}I \\
 &= T^*T - cT^* - \bar{c}(IT) + c\bar{c}I \\
 &= T^*(T - cI) - \bar{c}I(T - cI) \\
 &= (T - cI)(T^* - \bar{c}I) \\
 &= (T - cI)(T - cI)^*.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the operator  $T - cI$  is normal. ■

### Exercise 6.4.6

Let  $V$  be a complex inner product space, and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Define

$$T_1 = \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) \quad \text{and} \quad T_2 = \frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*).$$

- (a) Prove that  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are self-adjoint and that  $T = T_1 + iT_2$ .

**Proof.** By definition of  $T_1$ , we have

$$T_1^* = \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*)^* = \frac{1}{2}(T^* + T^{**}) = \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) = T_1.$$

Thus,  $T_1$  is self-adjoint. Likewise, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_2^* &= \left( \frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*) \right)^* = -\frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*)^* \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(T^{**} - T^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*) \\ &= T_2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T_2$  is self-adjoint. Observe that  $T = T_1 + iT_2$ . Hence, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_1 + iT_2 &= \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) + i\left(\frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*)\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) + \frac{1}{2}(T - T^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2T \\ &= T. \end{aligned}$$

■

- (b) Suppose that  $T = U_1 + iU_2$ , where  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  are self-adjoint. Prove that  $U_1 = T_1$  and  $U_2 = T_2$ .

**Proof.** Observe that  $T^* = U_1^* - iU_2^*$ . First, we will show  $U_1 = T_1$ . Since  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  are self-adjoint, we have  $T^* = U_1 - iU_2$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_1 &= \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) = \frac{1}{2}(U_1 + iU_2) + \frac{1}{2}(U_1^* - iU_2^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(U_1 + iU_2) + \frac{1}{2}(U_1 - iU_2) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2U_1 \\ &= U_1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have  $T_1 = U_1$ . For the second equality, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} T_2 &= \frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*) = \frac{1}{2i}(U_1 + iU_2) - \frac{1}{2i}(U_1^* - iU_2^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(U_1 + iU_2) - \frac{1}{2i}(U_1 - iU_2) \\ &= \frac{1}{2i} \cdot 2iU_2 \\ &= U_2. \end{aligned}$$

■

- (c) Prove that  $T$  is normal if and only  $T_1T_2 = T_2T_1$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $T$  is normal. Thus,  $TT^* = T^*T$  by definition. Our goal is to show  $T_1T_2 = T_2T_1$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 T_1T_2 &= \frac{1}{2}(T + T^*)\frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2i}(T^2 + T^*T - TT^* - (T^*)^2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2i}(T^2 - T^*T + T^*T - (T^*)^2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2i}(T(T - T^*) + T^*(T - T^*)) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2i}(T - T^*)\frac{1}{2}(T + T^*) \\
 &= T_2T_1.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T_1T_2 = T_2T_1$ . Conversely, suppose  $T_1T_2 = T_2T_1$ . Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 TT^* &= (T_1 + iT_2)(T_1 - iT_2) \\
 &= (T_1^2 + iT_2T_1 - iT_1T_2 - i^2T_2^2) \\
 &= (T_1^2 - iT_1T_2 + iT_1T_2 - i^2T_2^2) \\
 &= T_1(T_1 - iT_2) + iT_2(T_1 - iT_2) \\
 &= (T_1 - iT_2)(T + iT_2) \\
 &= T^*T.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that  $T^*T = TT^*$ . ■

### Exercise 6.4.7

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $W$  be a  $T$ -invariant subspace of  $V$ . Prove the following results.

- (a) If  $T$  is self-adjoint, then  $T_W$  is self-adjoint.

**Proof.** Suppose that  $T$  is self-adjoint. Our goal is to show that  $T_W$  is also self-adjoint. First, we show that  $W$  is  $T^*$ -invariant. Let  $y \in T^*(W)$ . Then  $y = T^*(x)$  for  $x \in W$ . But  $T$  is self-adjoint, so  $y = T^*(x) = T(x)$  where  $T(x) \in W$ . Thus,  $y \in W$  and so  $W$  is  $T^*$ -invariant. Therefore, we may place a restriction  $T_W$  such that  $T_W(x) = T(x)$  and  $T_W^*(x) = T^*(x)$ . Thus, for any  $x \in W$ , we have

$$T_W(x) = T(x) = T^*(x) = T_W^*(x)$$

and we are done. ■

- (b)  $W^\perp$  is  $T^*$ -invariant.

**Proof.** Our goal is to show that  $T^*(W^\perp) \subseteq W^\perp$ . Let  $y \in T^*(W^\perp)$ . Thus,  $y = T^*(x)$  for  $x \in W^\perp$ . Note that  $y \in W$  since  $W$  is  $T^*$ -invariant. We need to show that  $\langle y, w \rangle = 0$  for all  $w \in W$ . Then observe that

$$\langle y, w \rangle = \langle T^*(x), w \rangle = \langle x, T(w) \rangle.$$

Since  $x \in W^\perp$  and that  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant (that is,  $T(w) \in W$ ),  $\langle x, T(w) \rangle = 0$ . So, we conclude that  $\langle y, w \rangle = 0$  and that  $y \in W^\perp$ . So,  $W^\perp$  is  $T^*$ -invariant. ■



(c) If  $W$  is both  $T$ - and  $T^*$ -invariant, then  $(T_W)^* = (T^*)_W$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $W$  is both  $T$ - and  $T^*$ -invariant. We can place restrictions on  $T$  by having functions  $T_W$  and  $(T^*)_W$ . Let  $x \in W$ . Then

$$(T_W)^* = T^*(x) = (T^*)_W(x).$$

Thus, we conclude that  $(T_W)^* = (T^*)_W$ . ■

(d) If  $W$  is both  $T$ - and  $T^*$ -invariant and  $T$  is normal, then  $T_W$  is normal.

**Proof.** Suppose that  $W$  both  $T$ - and  $T^*$ -invariant. Using part (c) and the fact that  $T$  is normal, we can write

$$T_W(T_W)^* = T_W(T^*)_W = TT^* = T^*T = (T^*)_WT_W = (T_W)^*T_W.$$

Thus, we conclude that  $T_W$  is normal. ■

### Exercise 6.4.8

Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional complex inner product space  $V$ , and let  $W$  be a subspace of  $V$ . Prove that if  $W$  is  $T$ -invariant, then  $W$  is also  $T^*$ -invariant.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 6.4.9

Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ . Prove that  $N(T) = N(T^*)$  and  $R(T) = R(T^*)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ . Let  $x \in N(T)$ . Then  $T(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . By part (a) of Theorem 6.15, we have

$$0 = \|T(x)\| = \|T^*(x)\|.$$

By Theorem 6.1, we have  $T^*(x) = 0$ . So,  $x \in N(T^*)$  and thus  $N(T) \subseteq N(T^*)$ . The other containment is just the reverse of this argument. Thus,  $N(T) = N(T^*)$ . Using part (b) of Exercise 12 from Section 6.3, we have

$$R(T^*) = N(T)^\perp = N(T^*)^\perp = R(T^{**}) = R(T).$$

Thus,  $R(T^*) = R(T)$ . ■

### Exercise 6.4.10

Let  $T$  be a self-adjoint operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ . Prove that for all  $x \in V$ .

$$\|T(x) \pm ix\|^2 = \|T(x)\|^2 + \|x\|^2.$$

Deduce that  $T - iI$  is invertible and that the adjoint of  $(T - iI)^{-1}$  is  $(T + iI)^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a self-adjoint operator and  $x \in V$ . Note that  $\langle T(x), x \rangle = \langle x, T(x) \rangle$ . By

Exercise 19 of Section 6.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|T(x) + ix\|^2 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + 2\Re\langle T(x), ix \rangle + \|ix\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + \langle T(x), ix \rangle + \langle ix, T(x) \rangle + \|x\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + i\langle T(x), x \rangle - i\langle T(x), x \rangle + \|x\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + \|x\|^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|T(x) - ix\|^2 &= \|T(x)\|^2 - 2\Re\langle T(x), ix \rangle + \|ix\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 - \langle T(x), ix \rangle - \langle ix, T(x) \rangle + \|x\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + i\langle T(x), x \rangle - i\langle T(x), x \rangle + \|x\|^2 \\
 &= \|T(x)\|^2 + \|x\|^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that  $\|T(x) \pm ix\|^2 = \|T(x)\|^2 + \|x\|^2$ . Note that  $T - iI$  is invertible since  $\det(T - iI) \neq 0$ . By Exercise 8 of Section 6.3, we see that  $(T - iI)^* = T + iI$  is invertible and that

$$(T + iI)^* = \left( (T - iI)^* \right)^{-1}.$$

■

### Exercise 6.4.11

Assume that  $T$  is a linear operator on a complex (not necessarily finite-dimensional) inner product space  $V$  with an adjoint  $T^*$ . Prove the following results.

- (a) If  $T$  is self-adjoint, then  $\langle T(x), x \rangle$  is real for all  $x \in V$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is self-adjoint. Then observe that, for any  $x \in V$ , we have

$$\langle T(x), x \rangle = \langle x, T^*(x) \rangle = \langle x, T(x) \rangle = \overline{\langle T(x), x \rangle}.$$

Since  $\langle T(x), x \rangle$  is equal to its conjugate, we conclude that  $\langle T(x), x \rangle$  is real for all  $x \in V$ . ■

- (b) If  $T$  satisfies  $\langle T(x), x \rangle = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ , then  $T = T_0$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  satisfies  $\langle T(x), x \rangle = 0$  for all  $x \in V$ . Replacing  $x$  with  $x + y$  yields the inner product  $\langle T(x + y), x + y \rangle = 0$  for  $x, y \in V$ . Expanding this inner product yields

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= \langle T(x + y), x + y \rangle = \langle T(x) + T(y), x + y \rangle \\
 &= \langle T(x), x \rangle + \langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle T(y), x \rangle + \langle T(y), y \rangle \\
 &= \langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle T(y), x \rangle
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\langle T(x), y \rangle = -\langle T(y), x \rangle$  with  $\langle T(x), x \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle T(y), y \rangle = 0$  by assumption. So, we have

$$\langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle T(y), x \rangle = 0 \Rightarrow \langle T(x), y \rangle = -\langle T(y), x \rangle \quad (1)$$

Now, replace  $x + y$  with  $x + iy$ . Similarly, we have

$$0 = \langle T(x + iy), x + iy \rangle = -i\langle T(x), y \rangle + i\langle T(y), x \rangle.$$

So,

$$0 = -\langle T(x), y \rangle + \langle T(y), x \rangle \Rightarrow \langle T(y), x \rangle = \langle T(x), y \rangle \quad (2)$$

Using (1) and (2), we can now write

$$\langle T(x), y \rangle = -\langle T(x), y \rangle \Rightarrow \langle T(x), y \rangle = 0 \text{ for any } x, y \in V.$$

By Exercise 17 of Section 6.2, we conclude that  $T = T_0$ . ■

(c) If  $\langle T(x), x \rangle$  is real for all  $x \in V$ , then  $T$  is self-adjoint.

**Proof.** Suppose that  $\langle T(x), x \rangle$  is real for all  $x \in V$ . Then

$$\langle x, T^*(x) \rangle = \langle T(x), x \rangle = \overline{\langle T(x), x \rangle} = \langle x, T(x) \rangle.$$

Using Theorem 6.1, we conclude that  $T^*(x) = T(x)$  for all  $x \in V$ . So,  $T^* = T$ . ■

### Exercise 6.4.12

Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional real inner product space  $V$  whose characteristic polynomial splits. Prove that  $V$  has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of  $T$ . Hence prove that  $T$  is self-adjoint.

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional real inner product space  $V$  whose characteristic polynomial splits. By Theorem 6.16, we know there exists an orthonormal basis  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $T$ . Thus, we have the corresponding to eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$  of  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$ , respectively. Furthermore,  $[T]_\beta$  is a diagonal matrix and so is  $[T]_\beta^* = [T^*]_\beta$ . Note that  $\lambda_j = \overline{\lambda_j}$  for all  $j$  since  $V$  is a real inner product space. Hence, by part (c) of Theorem 6.15, we can see that

$$T(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j = \overline{\lambda_j} v_j = T^*(v_j).$$

So,  $T = T^*$  which implies that  $T$  is self-adjoint. ■

### Exercise 6.4.13

An  $n \times n$  real matrix  $A$  is said to be a **Gramian** matrix if there exists a real (square) matrix  $B$  such that  $A = B^t B$ . Prove that  $A$  is a Gramian matrix if and only if  $A$  is symmetric if and only if  $A$  is symmetric and all its eigenvalues are non-negative.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 6.4.14

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional real inner product space, and let  $U$  and  $T$  be self-adjoint linear operators on  $V$  such that  $UT = TU$ . Prove that there exists an orthonormal basis for  $V$  consisting of vectors that are eigenvectors of both  $U$  and  $T$ .

**Proof.** Let  $U$  and  $T$  be self-adjoint linear operators on  $V$  such that  $UT = TU$ . Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the eigenvalues of  $T$ . Let  $E_{\lambda_i}$  for all  $i$  be an eigenspace for  $T$ . Note that each  $E_{\lambda_i}$  is  $T$ -invariant and  $U$ -invariant. Thus, we can define a restriction  $U_{E_{\lambda_i}}(x) = U(x)$  for each  $x \in E_{\lambda_i}$  for all  $i$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $U$ . Thus, we can find a basis  $\beta_{E_{\lambda_i}}$  for each  $E_{\lambda_i}$ . Since  $U$  is self-adjoint and therefore diagonalizable, we have  $\beta = \beta_{\lambda_1} \cup \beta_{\lambda_2} \cdots \cup \beta_{\lambda_k}$  is a basis for  $V$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $U$  by Theorem 5.8. But note that we have

$U(E_{\lambda_i}) \subseteq E_{\lambda_i}$  for all  $i$ . So,  $\beta$  must also contain eigenvectors of  $T$ . We can employ the Gram-Schmidt process to convert the basis  $\beta$  into an orthonormal basis. Call this new basis as  $\beta'$  consisting of eigenvectors of both  $U$  and  $T$ . ■

**Definition 6.4.1 (Positive Definite).** A linear operator  $T$  on a finite-dimensional inner product space is called **positive definite** [**positive semidefinite**] if  $T$  is self-adjoint and  $\langle T(x), x \rangle > 0$  [ $\langle T(x), x \rangle \geq 0$ ] for all  $x \neq 0$ . An  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  with entries from  $\mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$  is called **positive definite** [**positive semidefinite**] if  $L_A$  is positive definite [positive definite].

### Exercise 6.4.17

Let  $T$  and  $U$  be self-adjoint linear operators on an  $n$ -dimensional inner product space  $V$ , and let  $A = [T]_\beta$ , where  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . Prove the following results.

- (a)  $T$  is positive definite [semidefinite] if and only if all of its eigenvalues are positive [nonnegative].

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is positive definite and let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$  consisting of eigenvectors. Let  $\lambda_j$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$  be the eigenvalues of each corresponding eigenvector  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$ . Since each  $v_j \neq 0$ , we have

$$\lambda_j = \lambda_j \langle v_j, v_j \rangle = \langle \lambda_j v_j, v_j \rangle = \langle T(v_j), v_j \rangle > 0.$$

Thus, we see that each  $\lambda_j > 0$  for all  $j$ . Conversely, if each  $\lambda_j > 0$  for all  $j$ , then we must have

$$\langle T(v_j), v_j \rangle = \langle \lambda_j v_j, v_j \rangle = \lambda_j \langle v_j, v_j \rangle = \lambda_j > 0.$$

Thus,  $T$  is positive definite. ■

- (b)  $T$  is positive definite if and only if

$$\sum_{i,j} A_{ij} a_j \overline{a_i} \text{ for all nonzero } n\text{-tuples } (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n).$$

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is positive definite. Let  $A = [T]_\beta$  where  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis of  $V$ . Let  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  be a nonzero tuple. Using the corollary to Theorem 6.5, we have

$$A_{ij} = \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle.$$

Suppose  $x \neq 0$ . Since  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis, we find that

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i$$

by Theorem 6.5. Define  $a_i = \langle x, v_i \rangle$ . So, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i,j} A_{ij} a_j \overline{a_i} &= \sum_{i,j} \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle a_j \overline{a_i} = \sum_{i=1}^n \overline{a_i} \sum_{j=1}^n a_j \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle \\ &= \left\langle \sum_{j=1}^n a_j T(v_j), \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i \right\rangle \\ &= \left\langle T\left(\sum_{j=1}^n a_j v_j\right), \sum_{i=1}^n a_i v_i \right\rangle \\ &= \langle T(x), x \rangle > 0. \end{aligned}$$

which is our desired result for the forwards direction. Conversely, suppose that

$$\sum_{i,j} A_{ij} a_j \overline{a_i} > 0$$

for all nonzero tuples  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ . Let  $x \neq 0$  in  $V$ . Since  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ , we have

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

Denote  $a_i = \langle x, v_i \rangle$ . Our goal is to show that  $\langle T(x), x \rangle > 0$ . Using the corollary to Theorem 6.5 again, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle T(x), x \rangle &= \left\langle T\left(\sum_{j=1}^n \langle x, v_j \rangle v_j\right), \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \right\rangle \\ &= \left\langle \sum_{j=1}^n \langle x, v_j \rangle T(v_j), \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \langle x, v_j \rangle \sum_{i=1}^n \overline{\langle x, v_i \rangle} \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle \\ &= \sum_{i,j} \langle T(v_j), v_i \rangle \langle x, v_j \rangle \overline{\langle x, v_i \rangle} \\ &= \sum_{i,j} A_{ij} \langle x, v_j \rangle \overline{\langle x, v_i \rangle} > 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $T$  is self-adjoint by assumption. Thus, we conclude that  $T$  is positive definite. ■

- (c)  $T$  is positive semidefinite if and only if  $A = B^*B$  for some square matrix  $B$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$  and let  $A = [T]_\beta$ . For the backwards direction, suppose  $A = B^*B$  for some matrix  $B$ . To show that  $T$  is positive semidefinite, it suffices to show that

$$\langle T(v_i), v_i \rangle \geq 0.$$

So, observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle T(v_i), v_i \rangle &= A_{ii} = (B^*B)_{ii} = \sum_{k=1}^n (B^*)_{ik} B_{ki} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{B_{ki}} B_{ki} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n |B_{ki}|^2 \geq 0.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $T$  is positive semidefinite. Conversely, suppose  $T$  is positive semidefinite. By definition,  $T$  is also self-adjoint. By Theorem 6.17, there exists an orthonormal basis  $\beta' = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $T$  with corresponding eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ . Suppose  $Q = [I]_{\beta'}^\beta$  is the matrix that changes  $\beta$  coordinates into  $\beta'$  coordinates. Observe that  $Q^{-1} = [I_V]_{\beta'}^\beta = Q$  and that  $Q^* = Q$  since  $I_V$  is self-adjoint. Thus, we can see that

$$[T]_\beta = Q[T]_{\beta'} Q^{-1}.$$

Let  $D = [T]_{\beta'}$  and define the linear operator  $U : V \rightarrow V$  such that  $U(v_i) = \sqrt{\lambda_i} v_i$ . Define the matrix representation of this linear operator with  $E = [U]_{\beta'}$ . Note that  $E$  is also diagonal since  $D$  is diagonal. Furthermore, we have  $E^2 = D$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned}[T]_\beta &= Q D Q^{-1} \\ &= Q^* E E Q \\ &= (E^* Q)^* (E Q) \\ &= (E Q)^* (E Q).\end{aligned}$$

Define  $B = EQ$  to get our desired result. ■

- (d) If  $T$  and  $U$  are positive semidefinite operators such that  $T^2 = U^2$ , then  $U = T$ .

**Proof.** Let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $V$  consisting of eigenvectors. Let  $\lambda_i$  and  $\lambda'_i$  be eigenvalues of these eigenvectors  $T$  and  $U$ , respectively. Since  $T$  and  $U$  are positive semidefinite operators such that  $T^2 = U^2$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle T^2(v_i), v_i \rangle &= \langle U^2(v_i), v_i \rangle \Rightarrow \langle \lambda_i^2 v_i, v_i \rangle = \langle \lambda_i'^2 v_i, v_i \rangle \\ &\Rightarrow \lambda_i^2 \langle v_i, v_i \rangle = \lambda_i'^2 \langle v_i, v_i \rangle \\ &\Rightarrow \lambda_i^2 = \lambda_i'^2.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\lambda_i = \lambda'_i$ . This implies that  $T = U$ . ■

- (e) If  $T$  and  $U$  are positive definite operators such that  $TU = UT$ , then  $TU$  is positive definite.

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  and  $U$  are positive definite operators such that  $TU = UT$ . Let  $x$  be an eigenvector of  $T$  and  $U$  where  $T(x) = \lambda_1 x$  and  $U(x) = \lambda_2 x$ . Since  $T$  and  $U$  are

positive definite operators, we have  $\lambda_1 > 0$  and  $\lambda_2 > 0$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle TU(x), x \rangle &= \langle UT(x), x \rangle = \langle U(T(x)), x \rangle \\ &= \langle U(\lambda_1 x), x \rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda_1 U(x), x \rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda_1 \lambda_2 x, x \rangle \\ &= \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \langle x, x \rangle > 0.\end{aligned}$$

Furthermore,  $UT = TU$  is self-adjoint since

$$TU = T^*U^* = (UT)^* = (TU)^*$$

where  $T$  and  $U$  are self-adjoint. Thus,  $TU$  is positive definite. ■

- (f)  $T$  is positive definite [semidefinite] if and only if  $A$  is positive definite [semidefinite].

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is positive definite and let  $A = [T]_\beta$  where  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $T$ . Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  be the eigenvalues of eigenvectors  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$ , respectively. By Exercise 6 of Section 5.1, the  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  are also eigenvalues of  $A$ . Since  $T$  is positive definite,  $\lambda_i > 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Thus, the eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of  $L_A$  are all greater than zero, and therefore,  $A$  must be positive definite. To show the converse, the argument is reversible. ■

### Exercise 6.4.18

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, where  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional inner product spaces. Prove the following results.

- (a)  $T^*T$  and  $TT^*$  are positive semidefinite.

**Proof.** Since  $V$  and  $W$  are finite-dimensional inner product spaces, we can construct orthonormal bases  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively via the Gram-Schmidt Process. That is, let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_m\}$  and  $\gamma = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}$  where  $T(v_i) = w_i$  for all  $i$ . Let  $\|\cdot\|_1$  and  $\|\cdot\|_2$  be the norms for  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. If  $x \in V$ , then

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle v_i.$$

Our goal is to show that  $\langle T^*T(x), x \rangle \geq 0$ . First, observe that

$$\langle T^*T(x), x \rangle_1 = \overline{\langle x, T^*T(x) \rangle_1} = \overline{\langle T(x), T(x) \rangle_2} = \langle T(x), T(x) \rangle_2 = \|T(x)\|_2^2.$$

Since  $\gamma$  is an orthonormal basis, we can use Exercise 6.1.12, to write

$$\begin{aligned}\|T(x)\|_2^2 &= \left\| T \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle_1 v_i \right) \right\|_2^2 = \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n \langle x, v_i \rangle_1 w_i \right\|_2^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle_1|^2 \|w_i\|_2^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle x, v_i \rangle_1|^2 \geq 0.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have that  $\langle T^*T(x), x \rangle \geq 0$ . Note that  $TT^*$  is self adjoint because

$$(TT^*)^* = T^{**}T^* = TT^*.$$

Thus,  $T^*T$  is positive semidefinite.

Now, let  $y \in W$  and define  $T^*(w_i) = v_i$ . Observe that

$$\langle TT^*(y), y \rangle_2 = \langle T^*(y), T^*(y) \rangle_1 = \|T^*(y)\|_1^2.$$

By Exercise 6.1.12, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \|T^*(y)\|_1^2 &= \left\| T^* \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \langle y, w_i \rangle_2 w_i \right) \right\|_1^2 \\ &= \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n \langle y, w_i \rangle_2 T^*(w_i) \right\|_1^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle y, w_i \rangle_2|^2 \|T^*(w_i)\|_1^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \|\langle y, w_i \rangle_2\|^2 \|v_i\|_1^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\langle y, w_i \rangle_2|^2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore,  $TT^*$  is self-adjoint since

$$(TT^*)^* = T^{**}T^* = TT^*.$$

Thus,  $TT^*$  is positive semidefinite. ■

(b)  $\text{rank}(T^*T) = \text{rank}(TT^*) = \text{rank}(T)$ . Since

**Proof.** Apply parts (a) and (b) of Exercise 6.3.13 to obtain the result. ■

### Exercise 6.4.19

Let  $T$  and  $U$  be positive definite operators on an inner product space  $V$ . Prove the following results.

(a)  $T + U$  is positive definite.

**Proof.** Let  $x \in V$  be nonzero. Observe that

$$\langle (T + U)(x), x \rangle = \langle T(x) + U(x), x \rangle = \langle T(x), x \rangle + \langle U(x), x \rangle.$$

Since  $T$  and  $U$  are positive definite operators, we must have

$$\langle T(x), x \rangle > 0 \text{ and } \langle U(x), x \rangle > 0.$$

This tells us that  $\langle (T + U)(x), x \rangle > 0$  and thus,  $T + U$  is positive definite. ■

(b) If  $c > 0$ , then  $cT$  is positive definite.



**Proof.** Let  $c > 0$ . Then for any  $x \in V$  nonzero,

$$\langle (cT)(x), x \rangle = \langle cT(x), x \rangle = c\langle T(x), x \rangle > 0$$

since  $\langle T(x), x \rangle > 0$  by assumption. So,  $cT$  is positive definite. ■

(c)  $T^{-1}$  is positive definite.

**Proof.** Suppose that  $T$  is invertible and  $T$  is positive-definite. Let  $x \in V$  be an eigenvector of  $T$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . Recall by Exercise 8 of Section 5.1 that for any eigenvalue  $\lambda$  of  $T$ ,  $\lambda^{-1}$  is an eigenvalue of  $T^{-1}$ . So, observe that

$$\langle T^{-1}(x), x \rangle = \langle \lambda^{-1}x, x \rangle = \lambda^{-1}\langle x, x \rangle.$$

Since  $x \neq 0$  and  $\lambda > 0$  (by part (a) of Exercise 6.4.18), we have  $\langle x, x \rangle > 0$  and  $\lambda^{-1} > 0$ . This implies that  $\langle T^{-1}(x), x \rangle > 0$ . So,  $T^{-1}$  is positive-definite. ■

### Exercise 6.4.20

Let  $V$  be an inner product space with inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , and a positive definite linear operator on  $V$ . Prove that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), y \rangle$  defines another inner product on  $V$ .

**Proof.** (a) Let  $x, y, z \in V$  be nonzero. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x + y, z \rangle' &= \langle T(x + y), z \rangle = \langle T(x) + T(y), z \rangle = \langle T(x), z \rangle + \langle T(y), z \rangle \\ &= \langle x, z \rangle' + \langle y, z \rangle'. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Let  $c \in F$ . Then

$$\langle cx, y \rangle' = \langle T(cx), y \rangle = \langle cT(x), y \rangle = c\langle T(x), y \rangle = c\langle x, y \rangle'.$$

Thus, part (b) is satisfied.

(c) Note that  $T$  is self-adjoint, so

$$\overline{\langle x, y \rangle'} = \overline{\langle T(x), y \rangle} = \langle y, T(x) \rangle = \langle T^*(x), y \rangle = \langle T(x), y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle'.$$

So, part (c) is satisfied.

(d) Since  $T$  is a positive definite operator, we have

$$\langle x, x \rangle' = \langle T(x), x \rangle > 0.$$

Thus, property (d) of the inner product is satisfied and so we conclude that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), y \rangle$  defines an inner product on  $V$ .

Thus, we conclude that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), y \rangle$  defines an inner product on  $V$ . ■

### Exercise 6.4.21

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and let  $T$  and  $U$  be self-adjoint operators on  $V$  such that  $T$  is positive definite. Prove that both  $TU$  and  $UT$  are diagonalizable linear operators that have only real eigenvalues.

**Proof.** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space, and let  $T$  and  $U$  be self-adjoint operators on  $V$  such that  $T$  is positive-definite. Since  $U$  is self-adjoint, there exists an orthonormal basis  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  consisting of eigenvectors of  $U$ . Using the hint available to us, suppose this orthonormal basis is given with respect to the inner product  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), y \rangle$ . We will show that  $UT$  is self-adjoint by showing that  $(UT)^* = UT$ . Let  $A_{ij} = \langle UT(v_j), v_i \rangle$ . Since  $T$  and  $U$  are self-adjoint, we must have the following hold

$$\begin{aligned}\langle UT(v_j), v_i \rangle &= \langle T(v_j), U(v_i) \rangle = \langle v_j, U(v_i) \rangle' \\ &= \langle v_j, \lambda_j v_j \rangle' \\ &= \lambda_j \langle v_j, v_i \rangle' \\ &= \lambda_j \delta_{ij}\end{aligned}$$

which implies that  $UT(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j$  whenever  $i = j$ . Note that the eigenvalues of  $U$  are only real eigenvalues by the lemma. On the other hand, we also see that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle (UT)^*(v_j), v_i \rangle &= \langle T^* U^*(v_j), v_i \rangle = \langle TU(v_j), v_i \rangle \\ &= \langle U(v_j), v_i \rangle' \\ &= \langle \lambda_j v_j, v_i \rangle' \\ &= \lambda_j \langle v_j, v_i \rangle' \\ &= \lambda_j \delta_{ij}\end{aligned}$$

which implies that  $(UT)^*(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j$  for all  $i = j$ . Thus,  $UT$  is self-adjoint which implies that  $[UT]_\beta$  is diagonalizable if and only if  $UT$  is diagonalizable. Furthermore, the eigenvalues of  $UT$  are only real eigenvalues given by lemma. Now, we will show that  $TU$  is diagonalizable. We will refer to the hint again, replacing  $T^{-1}$  with  $T$ . Since  $T$  is self-adjoint, we know that  $T^{-1}$  is also self-adjoint where  $(T^*)^{-1} = (T^{-1})^*$ . Furthermore,  $T^{-1}$  is positive definite by part (c) of Exercise 6.4.19. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle TU(v_j), v_i \rangle' &= \langle U(v_j), T(v_i) \rangle' = \langle T^{-1}U(v_j), T(v_i) \rangle \\ &= \langle U(v_j), v_i \rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda_j v_j, v_i \rangle \\ &= \lambda_j \langle v_j, v_i \rangle \\ &= \lambda_j \delta_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

So,  $(TU)(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j$ . Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle (TU)^*(v_j), v_i \rangle' &= \langle U^* T^*(v_j), v_i \rangle' = \langle UT(v_j), v_i \rangle' \\ &= \langle T(v_j), U(v_i) \rangle' \\ &= \langle v_j, \lambda_i v_i \rangle \\ &= \overline{\lambda_i} \langle v_j, v_i \rangle \\ &= \lambda_i \langle v_j, v_i \rangle \\ &= \lambda_i \delta_{ij}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(TU)^*(v_j) = \lambda_j v_j$  for all  $i = j$ . Therefore,  $(TU)^* = TU$  is self-adjoint which implies that  $TU$  is diagonalizable with only real eigenvalues. ■

### Exercise 6.4.22

This exercise provides to Exercise 20. Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space with inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , and let  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle'$  be any other inner product on  $V$ .

- (a) Prove that there exists a unique linear operator  $T$  on  $V$  such that  $\langle x, y \rangle' = \langle T(x), y \rangle$  for all  $x$  and  $y$  in  $V$ .

**Proof.** ■

- (b) Prove that the operator  $T$  of (a) is positive definite with respect to both inner products.

**Proof.** ■

## 6.5 Unitary and Orthogonal Operators

### Exercise 6.5.6

Let  $V$  be the inner product space of complex-valued continuous functions on  $[0, 1]$  with the inner product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{g(t)} dt.$$

Let  $h \in V$ , and define  $T : V \rightarrow V$  by  $T(f) = hf$ . Prove that  $T$  is a unitary operator if and only if  $|h(t)| = 1$   $0 \leq t \leq 1$ .

**Proof.** Let  $h \in V$ , and define  $T : V \rightarrow V$  by  $T(f) = hf$ . Define the function  $f(t) = \sqrt{1 - |h(t)|^2}$  which is nonnegative. Let  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . Suppose  $T$  is unitary. Then we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(f)\|^2 &= \|f\|^2 \Rightarrow \|f\|^2 - \|T(f)\|^2 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \langle f, f \rangle - \langle hf, hf \rangle = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \int_0^1 |f(t)|^2 (1 - |h(t)|^2) dt = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \int_0^1 (1 - |h(t)|^2)^2 dt = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $(1 - |h(t)|^2)^2$  is also nonnegative. So,  $1 - |h(t)|^2 = 0$  which implies  $|h(t)| = 1$  for all  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . Conversely, suppose  $|h(t)| = 1$  for all  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|f\|^2 &= \langle f, f \rangle = \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{f(t)} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 |h(t)|^2 f(t) \overline{f(t)} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 h(t) \overline{h(t)} f(t) \overline{f(t)} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 h(t) f(t) \overline{h(t) f(t)} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 h f(t) \overline{h f(t)} dt \\ &= \langle T(f), T(f) \rangle \\ &= \|T(f)\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\|T(f)\| = \|f\|$  and so we conclude that  $T$  is unitary. ■

### Exercise 6.5.7

Prove that if  $T$  is a unitary operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ , then  $T$  has a unitary *square root*; that is, there exists a unitary operator  $U$  such that  $T = U^2$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is unitary operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ . By Corollary to Theorem 6.18, there exists an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  with eigenvalues of absolute value 1; that is,  $|\lambda_i| = 1$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Define the linear operator  $U : V \rightarrow V$  by

$$U(v_i) = \sqrt{|\lambda_i|}v_i.$$

We need to show that  $U$  is unitary. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|U(v_i)\|^2 &= \langle U(v_i), U(v_i) \rangle = \langle \sqrt{|\lambda_i|}v_i, \sqrt{|\lambda_i|}v_i \rangle \\ &= \sqrt{|\lambda_i|}\sqrt{|\lambda_i|}\langle v_i, v_i \rangle \\ &= \langle v_i, v_i \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $U$  is a unitary operator such that

$$U^2(v_i) = U(U(v_i)) = U(\sqrt{|\lambda_i|}v_i) = \sqrt{|\lambda_i|}U(v_i) = |\lambda_i|v_i = T(v_i).$$

We conclude that  $U^2 = T$ . ■

### Exercise 6.5.8

Let  $T$  be a self-adjoint linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space. Prove that  $(T + iI)(T - iI)^{-1}$  is unitary using Exercise 10 of Section 6.4.

**Proof.** Using Exercise 10 of Section 6.4 and the fact that  $T - iI$  and  $T + iI$  are normal operators, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left((T + iI)(T - iI)^{-1}\right)\left((T + iI)(T - iI)^{-1}\right)^* &= \left((T + iI)(T - iI)^{-1}\right)\left(\left((T - iI)^{-1}\right)^*(T + iI)^*\right) \\ &= \left((T - iI)^*(T - iI)^{-1}\right)^*\left((T - iI)^{-1}(T - iI)\right) \\ &= \left((T - iI)^*(T - iI)^*\right)^{-1}\left((T - iI)^{-1}(T - iI)\right) \\ &= II = I. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(T + iI)(T - iI)^{-1}$  is unitary. ■

### Exercise 6.5.9

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  real symmetric or complex normal matrix. Prove that

$$\operatorname{tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \quad \text{and} \quad \operatorname{tr}(A^*A) = \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|^2$$

where the  $\lambda_i$ 's are the (not necessarily distinct) eigenvalues of  $A$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  real symmetric or complex normal matrix. Suppose  $A$  is a complex normal matrix. Using Theorem 6.19,  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to a diagonal matrix  $D$  such that  $A = P^*DP$  for some unitary matrix  $P$ . Thus, there exists an orthonormal basis  $\beta$  consisting of eigenvectors  $v_1, \dots, v_n$  corresponding to eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Since the trace of the product of two matrices commute, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{tr}(A) &= \operatorname{tr}((P^*D)P) = \operatorname{tr}(PP^*D) \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(D) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i\end{aligned}$$

where the each  $\lambda_i$  not necessarily distinct. If  $A$  is a real symmetric matrix, then  $A$  is self-adjoint. This tells us that  $A$  is normal to which we can apply the same theorem to get the same result above. To get the second equation, observe that the first equation implies that the  $A_{ii} = \lambda_i$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{tr}(A^*A) &= \sum_{i=1}^n (A^*A)_{ii} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^n (A)^*_{ik} A_{ki} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{A_{ki}} A_{ki} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^n |A_{ki}|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|^2\end{aligned}$$

which is our desired result. ■

### Exercise 6.5.12

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  real symmetric or complex normal matrix. Prove that

$$\det(A) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i,$$

where the  $\lambda_i$ 's are the (not necessarily distinct) eigenvalues of  $A$ .

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  real symmetric or complex normal matrix. Suppose  $A$  is a complex normal matrix. Using Theorem 6.19,  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to a diagonal matrix  $D$  such that  $A = P^*DP$  for some unitary matrix  $P$ . Thus, there exists an orthonormal basis  $\beta$  consisting of eigenvectors  $v_1, \dots, v_n$  corresponding to eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Using the

properties of determinant and the fact that  $P^*P = I$ , we get that

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= \det(P^*DP) = \det(P^*)\det(D)\det(P) \\ &= \det(P^*)\det(P)\det(D) \\ &= \det((P^*P)D) \\ &= \det(D) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i\end{aligned}$$

with each  $\lambda_i$  not necessarily distinct. A similar argument can be applied if  $A$  is a real symmetric matrix. Thus, we have that

$$\det(A) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i.$$

■

### Exercise 6.5.13

Suppose that  $A$  and  $B$  are diagonalizable matrices. Prove or disprove that  $A$  is similar to  $B$  if and only if  $A$  and  $B$  are unitarily equivalent.

**Proof.**

■

### Exercise 6.5.14

Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are unitarily equivalent matrices, then  $A$  is positive definite [semidefinite] if and only if  $B$  is positive definite [semidefinite].

**Proof.** Suppose  $A$  and  $B$  are unitarily equivalent. For the forwards direction, suppose  $A$  is positive definite. Since  $A$  and  $B$  are unitarily equivalent, there exists a unitary matrix  $P$  such that  $A = P^*BP$ . Observe that this can be rewritten to  $B = PAP^*$ . Since  $A$  is positive definite and that  $A$  is self-adjoint (therefore,  $A$  is must be diagonalizable), we must have that all eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  of  $A$  are positive. Since  $P$  is unitary, we find that  $P^*P = I$ . So, looking at the determinant of  $B$ , we get that

$$\begin{aligned}\det(B) &= \det(PAP^*) = \det(P)\det(A)\det(P^*) \\ &= \det(P^*)\det(P)\det(A) \\ &= \det(P^*P)\det(A) \\ &= \det(A) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i.\end{aligned}$$

Since each  $\lambda_i > 0$  for all  $i$ , the diagonal entries of  $B$  must also be positive. But these eigenvalues of  $A$  are also eigenvalues of  $B$ . So, all the eigenvalues of  $B$  are positive. Also,

we have that  $B$  is self-adjoint because

$$\begin{aligned} B^* &= (P(AP^*))^* = (AP^*)^* P^* \\ &= PA^* P^* \\ &= PAP^* \\ &= B. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $B$  must be positive definite. A similar argument can be used to prove the other direction, but this time, switching the places of  $A$  and  $B$ . Thus,  $A$  is also positive definite. ■

### Exercise 6.5.15

Let  $U$  be a unitary operator on an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional  $U$ -invariant subspace of  $V$ . Prove that

- (a)  $U(W) = W$ ;

**Proof.** We need to show both containments; that is,  $U(W) \subseteq W$  and  $W \subseteq U(W)$ . Since  $W$  is  $U$ -invariant, we must have  $U(W) \subseteq W$ . To show that  $W \subseteq U(W)$ . Since  $W$  is finite-dimensional, let  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $W$ . Since  $U$  is unitary, we can see that  $U(\beta)$  is also an orthonormal basis for  $W$  by Theorem 6.18. Thus, if  $w \in W$ , we can write

$$w = \sum_{i=1}^n \langle w, U(v_i) \rangle U(v_i).$$

This tells us that  $w \in U(W)$  since  $U(v_i) \in U(\beta)$ . So,  $w \in U(W)$ . Thus,  $U(W) = W$ . ■

- (b)  $W^\perp$  is  $U$ -invariant.

**Proof.** We need to show that  $U(W^\perp) \subseteq W^\perp$ . Let  $y \in U(W^\perp)$ . Then  $y = U(x)$  for  $x \in W^\perp$ . Since  $U$  is unitary, we have  $U^*U = I = UU^*$ , which implies that  $U$  is normal. Thus, we have  $W$  is  $U^*$ -invariant. Then

$$\langle y, z \rangle = \langle U(x), z \rangle = \langle x, U^*(z) \rangle = 0.$$

Therefore,  $y \in W^\perp$ . ■

### Exercise 6.5.17

Prove that a matrix that is both unitary and upper triangular must be a diagonal matrix.

**Proof.** Let  $A$  be a square matrix and suppose  $A$  is both unitary and upper triangular. Since  $A$  is unitary, the columns of  $A$  form an orthonormal basis for  $F^n$ . This is because

$$\delta_{ij} = I_{ij} = (A^*A)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n (A^*)_{ik} A_{kj} = \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{A_{ki}} A_{kj}.$$

Note that  $A$  is also upper triangular. So, for every  $i > j$ , we have  $A_{ij} = 0$ . But the columns of  $A$  form an orthonormal basis, and so  $A_{ij} = A_{ij}\delta_{ij} = 0$  whenever  $i \neq j$ . This tells us that  $A$  must be a diagonal matrix and we are done. ■

### Exercise 6.5.18

Show that "is unitarily equivalent to" is an equivalence relation on  $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$ .

**Proof.** (a) Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$ . We will show that  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to itself. Since  $I$  is a unitary matrix, we have  $A = I^*AI$ . Thus,  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to itself.

(b) Let  $A, B \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$ . Suppose  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to  $B$ . Thus,  $A = P^*BP$  for some unitary matrix  $P$ . We need to show that  $B$  is unitarily equivalent to  $A$ . Since  $P$  is unitary, we can multiply  $P$  on the left side of  $A$  and  $P^*$  on the right side of  $A$  to get

$$B = PAP^*.$$

Set  $D = P^*$  and observe that  $(P^*)^* = D^*$ . So, we have  $B = D^*AD$ . Hence,  $B$  is unitarily equivalent to  $A$ .

(c) Suppose  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to  $B$  and  $B$  is unitarily equivalent to  $C$ . Then there exists unitary matrices  $P$  and  $D$  such that  $A = P^*BP$  and  $B = D^*CD$ , respectively. We must show that  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to  $C$ . So, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P^*BP = P^*(D^*CD)P \\ &= (DP)^*C(DP) \\ &= X^*CX. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{set } X = DP)$$

Thus,  $A$  is unitarily equivalent to  $C$ .

Therefore, we conclude that "is unitarily equivalent to" is an equivalence relation on  $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$ . ■

### Exercise 6.5.19

Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$ . By Theorem 6.7 and the exercises of Section 1.3,  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ . Define  $U : V \rightarrow V$  by  $U(v_1 + v_2) = v_1 - v_2$ , where  $v_1 \in W$  and  $v_2 \in W^\perp$ . Prove that  $U$  is a self-adjoint unitary operator.

**Proof.** First, we show that  $U : V \rightarrow V$  is a linear operator. Let  $x, y \in V$ . Since  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ , we have  $x = x_1 + x_2$  and  $y = y_1 + y_2$ . Let  $c \in F$ . Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} x + cy &= (x_1 + x_2) + c(y_1 + y_2) \\ &= (x_1 + cy_1) + (x_2 + cy_2). \end{aligned}$$

So, we have

$$\begin{aligned} U(x + cy) &= x_1 + cy_1 - (x_2 + cy_2) \\ &= (x_1 - x_2) - c(y_1 - y_2) \\ &= U(x) + cU(y). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $U$  is linear. To show that  $U$  is unitary, we can show  $\|U(x)\| = \|x\|$ . Since  $x = x_1 + x_2$



and  $\overline{\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle} = \langle x_2, x_1 \rangle = 0$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned}\|U(x)\|^2 &= \|U(x_1 + x_2)\|^2 = \|x_1 - x_2\|^2 \\ &= \|x_1\|^2 - 2\Re\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle + \|x_2\|^2 \\ &= \|x_1\|^2 + \|x_2\|^2 \\ &= \|x_1 + x_2\|^2 \\ &= \|x\|^2.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $U$  must be an unitary. To show that  $U$  is self-adjoint, we need to show  $U = U^*$ . Since  $U$  is unitary, we have  $U^*U = I = UU^*$ . Observe that, by definition of  $U$ , we have

$$U(x) = U(x_1 + x_2) = I(x_1 - x_2) = U^*(U(x_1 - x_2)) = U^*(x_1 + x_2) = U^*(x).$$

So, we conclude that  $U$  is self-adjoint. ■

**Definition 6.5.1 (Partial Isometry).** Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space. A linear operator  $U$  on  $V$  is called a **partial isometry** if there exists a subspace  $W$  of  $V$  such that  $\|U(x)\| = \|x\|$  for all  $x \in W$  and  $U(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in W^\perp$ . Observe that  $W$  need *not* be  $U$ -invariant.

### Exercise 6.5.20

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space. Suppose  $U$  is a **partial isometry** and  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $W$ . Prove the following results.

- (a)  $\langle U(x), U(y) \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in W$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x, y \in W$ . The process is the same as Exercise 10 of Section 6.3. ■

- (b)  $\{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k)\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $R(U)$ .

**Proof.** First, we show that  $\{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k)\}$  is an orthonormal subset of  $R(U)$ . Since  $\{v_1, \dots, v_k\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $W$ , we see that (by part (a))

$$\langle U(v_i), U(v_j) \rangle = \langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}.$$

Now, using Theorem 2.2, we have  $\{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k)\}$  spans  $R(U)$ . Additionally, Corollary 2 of Theorem 6.3 implies that this set is also linearly independent. Thus,  $\{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k)\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $R(U)$ . ■

- (c) There exists an orthonormal basis  $\gamma$  for  $V$  such that the first  $k$  columns of  $[U]_\gamma$  form an orthonormal set and the remaining columns are zero.

**Proof.** Using Theorem 6.7, we can extend  $\beta = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  into an orthonormal basis  $\gamma$  for  $V$ . By the same Theorem, the last  $n - k$  vectors of  $\gamma$  form an orthonormal basis for  $W^\perp$ . Thus, if we consider the entries of  $[U]_\gamma$ , we find that the first  $k$  column vectors form an orthonormal set (by part (b)) and that the last  $n - k$  column vectors are 0 since  $U(v_i) = 0$  for all  $v_i \in W^\perp$  for  $k + 1 \leq i \leq n$ . ■

- (d) Let  $\{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_j\}$  be an orthonormal basis for  $(R(U))^\perp$  and

$$\beta = \{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k), \dots, w_1, \dots, w_j\}.$$

Then  $\beta$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ .

**Proof.** Note that every vector in  $\beta_2 = \{w_1, \dots, w_j\}$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $\beta_1 = \{U(v_1), U(v_2), \dots, U(v_k)\}$ . Furthermore, if  $\langle U(v_i), w_j \rangle = 1$ , then  $U(v_i) = w_j$ . Since  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  are both orthonormal sets, we have  $\beta = \beta_1 \cup \beta_2$  must also be orthonormal. Additionally,  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  are orthonormal bases for  $R(U)$  and  $(R(U))^\perp$ , respectively. So,  $\beta$  must be an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . ■

- (e) Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $V$  that satisfies  $T(U(v_i)) = v_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq k$ ) and  $T(w_i) = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq j$ . Then  $T$  is well-defined, and  $T = U^*$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $v_i$  and  $v'_i$  in  $V$ . By definition of  $T$ , we have

$$T(U(v_i)) = T(U(v'_i)) \Rightarrow v_i = v'_i.$$

Now, suppose  $T(w_i) = \varepsilon_i$  and  $T(w_i) = \varepsilon'_i$  where  $\varepsilon_i, \varepsilon'_i \in V$ . But  $T(w_i) = 0$ , so we must have  $\varepsilon_i = \varepsilon'_i = 0$ . Thus,  $T$  is well-defined. Now, we will show that  $T = U^*$ . Using the hint, we shall show that  $\langle U(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle$  for all  $x, y \in \beta$ . We have four cases to prove in order to show this. Consider  $\langle U(U(v_i)), U(v_j) \rangle$ . By Theorem 6.18, we have that

$$\langle U(U(v_i)), U(v_\ell) \rangle = \langle U(v_i), v_\ell \rangle = \langle U(v_i), T(U(v_\ell)) \rangle$$

where  $U(v_i), U(v_\ell) \in \beta$ . Consider  $\langle U(w_i), w_\ell \rangle$ . Using Theorem 6.8, define the function  $g : \beta \rightarrow F$   $g(w_i) = \langle w_i, T(w_\ell) \rangle$  with unique vector  $T(w_\ell) = w'_\ell$ . Then we have

$$\langle U(w_i), w_\ell \rangle = \langle w_i, T(w_\ell) \rangle.$$

Next, consider  $\langle U(U(v_i)), w_k \rangle$ . Similarly to the last case, we define another function  $\sigma(U(v_i)) = \langle U(v_i), T(w_\ell) \rangle$  with  $T(w_\ell)$  being a unique vector in  $V$ . Then we have

$$\langle U(U(v_i)), w_\ell \rangle = \langle U(v_i), T(w_\ell) \rangle.$$

Finally, consider  $\langle U(w_i), U(v_\ell) \rangle$ . Using Theorem 6.18 and definition of  $T$ , we have

$$\langle U(w_i), U(v_\ell) \rangle = \langle w_i, v_\ell \rangle = \langle w_i, T(U(v_\ell)) \rangle.$$

Thus, for any  $x, y \in \beta$  we get that  $\langle U(x), y \rangle = \langle x, T(y) \rangle$  with  $T = U^*$ . ■

- (f)  $U^*$  is a partial isometry.

**Proof.** From part (e), we see that  $T = U^*$  implies that  $U^*(U(v_i)) = v_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq k$ ) and  $U^*(w_i) = 0$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq j$ . Consequently,  $U^*U = I$  which is equivalent to  $\|U^*(x)\| = \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$ . Thus,  $U^*$  is also a partial isometry. ■

### Exercise 6.5.21

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices that are unitarily equivalent.

- (a) Prove that  $\text{tr}(A^*A) = \text{tr}(B^*B)$ .

**Proof.** Since  $A$  and  $B$  are  $n \times n$  matrices that are unitarily equivalent, there exists a unitary matrix  $P$  such that  $A = P^*BP$ . Note that

$$A^* = ((P^*B)P)^* = P^*(P^*B)^* = P^*B^*P.$$

Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{tr}(A^*A) &= \operatorname{tr}((P^*B^*P)(P^*BP)) = \operatorname{tr}((P^*B^*)BP) \\ &= \operatorname{tr}((BP)(P^*B^*)) \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(BB^*) \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(B^*B).\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we conclude that

$$\operatorname{tr}(A^*A) = \operatorname{tr}(B^*B)$$

for any  $A$  and  $B$   $n \times n$  matrices that are unitarily equivalent. ■

(b) Use (a) to prove that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n |A_{ij}|^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^n |B_{ij}|^2.$$

**Proof.** From part (a), we get

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i,j=1}^n |A_{ij}|^2 &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n \overline{A_{ij}} A_{ij} = \operatorname{tr}(A^*A) \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(B^*B) \\ &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n \overline{B_{ij}} B_{ij} \\ &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n |B_{ij}|^2\end{aligned}$$

which is our desired result. ■

(c) Use (b) to show that the matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & i \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} i & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

are *not* unitarily equivalent.

**Proof.** Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & i \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} i & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Computing the sum of the absolute value squared of the entries of each matrix above, we see that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n |A_{ij}|^2 = 5 + i \neq 6 + i = \sum_{i,j=1}^n |B_{ij}|^2.$$

So, the matrices above ■

## 6.6 Orthogonal Projections and the Spectral Theorem

### Exercise 6.6.4

Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$ . Show that if  $T$  is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ , then  $I - T$  is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W^\perp$ .

**Proof.** Suppose  $T$  is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ . Then, by definition, we have

$$N(T) = R(T)^\perp \text{ and } R(T) = N(T)^\perp.$$

In order to show that  $I - T$  is an orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ , it suffices to show that  $I - T$  is a projection and that

$$R(I - T) = N(T) \text{ and } N(I - T) = R(T).$$

Since  $T$  is a projection of  $V$  on  $W$ , we have  $T^2 = T$ . So, observe that

$$(I - T)^2 = I^2 - 2IT + T^2 = I - 2T + T = I - T.$$

Thus, we have that  $I - T$  is a projection. Let  $x \in R(I - T)$ . Thus,

$$x = (I - T)(x) = I(x) - T(x) = x - T(x)$$

which implies  $T(x) = 0$ . Thus,  $x \in N(T)$ . Now, let  $x \in N(T)$ . Then

$$T(x) = 0 = I(x) - x \Rightarrow (I - T)(x) = x.$$

Thus,  $x \in R(I - T)$  since  $I - T$  is a projection. Therefore, we conclude that  $R(I - T) = N(T)$ . Now, let  $x \in N(I - T)$ . Then we have  $(I - T)(x) = 0$ . So,  $T(x) = I(x) = x$ . Since  $T$  is a projection, we must also have  $x \in R(T)$ . On the other hand, let  $x \in R(T)$ . Then  $T(x) = x$  and so reversing the steps from the prior argument, we must have  $(I - T)(x) = 0$ . So,  $x \in N(I - T)$ . Thus, we have  $N(I - T) = R(T)$ . Thus,  $I - T$  is an orthogonal projection. Note that  $R(T) = W$  and so with our results, we must have

$$R(I - T) = N(T) = R(T)^\perp = W^\perp.$$

Thus,  $I - T$  is an orthogonal projection on  $W^\perp$ . ■

### Exercise 6.6.5

Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ .

- (a) If  $T$  is an orthogonal projection, prove that  $\|T(x)\| \leq \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$ . Give an example of a projection for which this inequality does not hold. What can be concluded about a projection for which the inequality is actually an equality for  $x \in V$ .

**Proof.** ■

- (b) Suppose that  $T$  is a projection such that  $\|T(x)\| \leq \|x\|$  for all  $x \in V$ . Prove that  $T$  is an orthogonal projection.

**Proof.** ■

### Exercise 6.6.6

Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional inner product space. Prove that if  $T$  is a projection, then  $T$  is also an orthogonal projection.

**Proof.** ■

---

### Exercise 6.6.7

Let  $T$  be a normal operator on a finite-dimensional complex inner product space  $V$ . Use the spectral decomposition  $\lambda_1 T_1 + \lambda_2 T_2 + \cdots + \lambda_k T_k$  of  $T$  to prove the following results.

- (a) If  $g$  is a polynomial, then

$$g(T) = \sum_{i=1}^k g(\lambda_i) T_i.$$

**Proof.**

- (b) If  $T^n = T_0$  for some  $n$ , then  $T = T_0$ .

**Proof.**

- (c) Let  $U$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Then  $U$  commutes with  $T$  if and only if  $U$  commutes with each  $T_i$ .

**Proof.**

- (d) There exists a normal operator  $U$  on  $V$  such that  $U^2 = T$ .

**Proof.**

- (e)  $T$  is invertible if and only if  $\lambda_i \neq 0$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ .

**Proof.**

- (f)  $T$  is a projection if and only if every eigenvalue of  $T$  is 1 or 0.

**Proof.**

- (g)  $T = -T^*$  if and only if every  $\lambda_i$  is an imaginary number.

**Proof.**